

PCB123 Version 5

User Guide and Reference manual





Contents

Overview	14
Introduction	14
Software features out of the box	14
User Extendibility	16
One eye on the future	
Our Commitment	
Part 1 - Getting Started	20
Introduction	
Screen Layout	
Common functionality	
Pan and Zoom	24
Names and Numbers	25
Selection	27
Context Menus	
Commands	
Starting a New Design	
Overview of PCB design tasks	
Data Requirements	
The New-Board Wizard	
Starting Without the New-Board Wizard	
Results of Creating a New Design	
Default Settings	
PCB123 Directories	
Part 2 - Schematic User Guide	42
The Schematic/PCB Contract	
A little background	43
The Design-by-contract solution	
Properties	
	1•

Symbols and Parts	48
Parts	50
Symbols	50
Pre-Defined Parts	62
The Part Taxonomy	64
Hierarchy and Inheritance	65
Pre-defined Parts	68
The Part Manager	69
Acquiring Data	71
The Symbol Editor	75
Inside/Outside	76
Adding pins	77
Adding Shapes	78
Adding Arcs	80
Adding Text	81
Adding properties	82
Saving symbols	83
Sections	83
Binding to specific symbols	83
Mapping pin names to pin numbers	84
Hidden pins	85
Saving parts	86
Finding Parts	87
Part search	87
Define New Part	88
Ports	97
Ports and net names	97
Schematic Pages	99
Adding Schematic Pages	
Synchronization pages	
The Title Block	101
Page size	102



The Schematic Editor	103
Adding parts to a page	
Adding ports to a page	
Adding wires	
Adding nomenclature	
Properties	
Cut/copy/paste	
Moving parts	
Part 3 - Layout User Guide	106
Layout Views and Panels	107
Display Panel	
Design View	
3D View	
Footprint Editor	
DRC Panel	
Project Panel	
PCB Design Tasks	113
Create missing footprints	114
Creating footprints from scratch	
Modify and existing footprint from a library	
Use an existing component as a starting point	
Prepare Mechanical Features	
Adjusting the board outline	
Add mounting hardware	
Place components	120
Fixed component locations	
Autoplace components	
Manual place components	
Power, ground, and critical routing	122
Power and ground plane layers	
rower and ground plane layers	



Critical routing	128
General routing	128
Fanout and autorouting	129
Manual routing	131
Routing techniques	133
Fills, and Nomenclature	134
Active copper fill regions	134
Nomenclature	136
Order Boards	139
The Order process	139
Routing your Design	143
Before you route	143
Routing the board	143
Adding copper regions	145
Design Changes	147
Design Rule Checking	147
Object Editing	148
Object Editing	
	148
Setting the grid	148 148
Setting the grid Changing layers	148 148 149
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width	148 148 149 149
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board	148 148 149 149 149
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board Move a component	148 148 149 149 149 149
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board Move a component Move a component to the other side of the board	148 148 149 149 149 149 149
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board Move a component Move a component to the other side of the board Rotate a component	148 148 149 149 149 149 149 150
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board Move a component Move a component to the other side of the board Rotate a component Edit a component	148 148 149 149 149 149 149 150 150
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board Move a component Move a component to the other side of the board Rotate a component Edit a component Add a pin to the board	148 148 149 149 149 149 150 150 150
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board Move a component Move a component to the other side of the board Rotate a component Edit a component Add a pin to the board Add a slot to the board	148 148 149 149 149 149 149 150 150 150
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board Move a component Move a component to the other side of the board Rotate a component Edit a component Add a pin to the board Add a slot to the board Move a pin	148 148 149 149 149 149 149 150 150 150 151
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board Move a component Move a component to the other side of the board Rotate a component Edit a component Add a pin to the board Add a slot to the board Move a pin Change a pin	148 148 149 149 149 149 149 150 150 150 151 151
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board Move a component Move a component to the other side of the board Rotate a component Edit a component Add a pin to the board Move a pin Add a slot to the board Move a pin Change a pin Add a polygon or polyline	148 148 149 149 149 149 149 150 150 150 151 151 151
Setting the grid Changing layers Changing line width Add a component to the board Move a component Move a component to the other side of the board Rotate a component Edit a component Add a pin to the board Add a pin to the board Move a pin Change a pin Add a polygon or polyline Add a circle	148 148 149 149 149 149 149 150 150 150 151 151 151 151



1	Nove a board outline1	52
1	Nove board outline corners	52
[Delete board outline corners	52
I	nsert corners in a board outline	53
ļ	Add a connection between two pins1	53
F	Remove a pin from a net1	53
S	Start routing from a pin1	53
9	Start routing from another route1	53
ļ	Add a via between layers	54
I	nsert corners in a route	55
[Delete route corners	55
ſ	Nove a route corner	55
ſ	1. Nove a route segment	55
(Change the width of a route segment1	55
ļ	Add text to the board	55
F	Rename a component1	56
[Designing a board without a netlist1	56
ļ	About loading a Netlist	56
Pa	rt 4 - Schematic Reference 15	9
м	ain Menu	50
FI	le menu 16	•0
1	New1	60
(Dpen 1	60
(Close	61
S	Save1	61
S	Save As1	61
E	Backup Now1	61
F	Print	61
F	Print Setup1	62



Redo	
Cut	
Сору	
Paste	
Delete	
Properties	
Insert menu	164
Add Page	
Add Part	
Add Analog Ground Port	
Add Digital Ground Port	
Add Voltage Port	
Add Global Port	
Add Off-Page Port	
Add Line	
Add Arc	
Add Polyline	
Add Rectangle	
Add Polygon	
Add Text	
View menu	167
View Standard Toolbar	
View Add Object Toolbar	
View Zoom Toolbar	
Zoom Submenu	
Zoom In	
Zoom Out	
Zoom All	
Pan Up	
Pan Left	
Pan Right	
Pan Down	
Redraw	



Tools menu	169
Symbol Editor	
Manage Parts	
Electrical Rules Check	
Generate Netlist from Schematic	
PCB123 menu	170
MY Account	
PCB123 Website	
Report a Bug	
Window menu	
Cascade	
Tile	
Arrange Icons	
Part 5 - Layout Reference	
Main Menu	
-	173
Main Menu	173 173
Main Menu	 173 173
Main Menu File menu	173 173 173 173 174
Main Menu File menu New command Open command	173 173 173 173 174 174
Main Menu File menu New command Open command Close command	173 173 173 173 174 174 174
Main Menu File menu New command Open command Close command Save command	173 173 173 173 173 174 174 174 174
Main Menu File menu New command Open command Close command Save command Save As command	173 173 173 173 174 174 174 174 174 174 174 174 174
Main Menu File menu New command Open command Close command Save command Save As command Save As Template command Import Gerber Import PCB123 XML	173 173 173 173 174 174 174 174 174 174 175 175
Main Menu File menu New command Open command Close command Save command Save command Save As command Save As Template command Import Gerber.	173 173 173 173 174 174 174 174 174 174 175 175
Main Menu File menu New command Open command Close command Save command Save As command Save As Template command Import Gerber Import PCB123 XML	173 173 173 173 173 174 174 174 174 174 174 175 175 175
Main Menu File menu New command Open command Close command Save command Save command Save As command Save As Template command Import Gerber Import PCB123 XML Export BOM command Export Netlist command Export XML Data	173 173 173 173 173 174 174 174 174 174 174 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175
Main Menu File menu New command Open command Close command Save command Save command Save As command Save As Template command Import Gerber Import PCB123 XML Export BOM command Export Netlist command Export XML Data Backup Now command	173 173 173 173 173 174 174 174 174 174 174 174 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175
Main Menu File menu New command Open command Close command Save command Save command Save As command Save As command Import Gerber Import PCB123 XML Export BOM command Export Netlist command Export XML Data Backup Now command Print command	173 173 173 174 174 174 174 174 174 174 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 176
Main Menu File menu New command Open command Close command Save command Save command Save As command Save As Template command Import Gerber Import PCB123 XML Export BOM command Export Netlist command Export XML Data Backup Now command	173 173 173 174 174 174 174 174 174 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 175 176 176



Exit command	
dit menu	
Undo command	
Redo command	
Cut command	
Copy command	
Paste command	
Delete command	
Load Selection command	
Save Selection command	
Find command	
Bring to Cursor command	
Measure command	
ine Width command	
Grid command	
Select Pins command	
elect Polygons command	
Select Text command	
Select Components command	
elect Tracks command	
Select Anything command	
Select Nothing command	
Properties command	
nsert menu	
Select command	
Add Cutout	
Add Pin command	
Add Freestyle Route command	
Add Polygon command	
Add Arc command	
Add Circle command	
Add Text command	
Add Component command	



	Add Footprint command	184
	Add Connection command	
١	View menu	184
	Refresh All	
	Go-To First Error	
	Go-To Next Error	
	User Preferences	
	Toolbars/Edit Panel	
	Toolbars/Standard Toolbar	
	Toolbars/Add Object Toolbar	
	Toolbars/Layers Toolbar	
	Toolbars/Selection Toolbar	
	Toolbars/Zoom Toolbar	
	Zoom/Zoom In	
	Zoom/Zoom Out	
	Zoom/Zoom All	
	Zoom/Pan Up	
	Zoom/Pan Left	
	Zoom/Pan Right	
	Zoom/Pan Down	
	Zoom/Redraw	
	Layers/Top	
	Layers/Bottom	
	Layers/Inner1	
	Layers/Inner2	
	Layers/Inner3	
	Layers/Inner4	
	Layers/Silkscreen Top	
	Layers/Silkscreen Bottom	
	Layers/Soldermask Top	
	Layers/Soldermask Bottom	
C	Design menu	189
	Board Configuration	



New Footprint	
Edit Footprint	
Manage Library	
Optimize Net Lengths	
Autoplace	
Fanout SMT Pads	
Autoroute	
Gloss	
Clear DRC Errors	
Run DRC	
PCB123 menu	193
MY Account	
PCB123 Website	
Report a Bug	
Density Graph	
DXF Import/Export	
IDF Import/Export	
Relax Routing	
Window menu	195
Window menu	
Cascade	
Cascade	
Cascade Tile Arrange Icons	
Cascade Tile Arrange Icons Toolbars	
Cascade Tile Arrange Icons Toolbars Main toolbar	
Cascade Tile Arrange Icons Toolbars Main toolbar Add Object toolbar	
Cascade Tile Arrange Icons Toolbars Main toolbar Add Object toolbar Layer toolbar	
Cascade Tile Arrange Icons Toolbars Main toolbar Add Object toolbar Layer toolbar Selection toolbar	
Cascade Tile Arrange Icons Toolbars Main toolbar Add Object toolbar Layer toolbar Selection toolbar Zoom toolbar	
Cascade Tile Arrange Icons Toolbars Main toolbar Add Object toolbar Layer toolbar Selection toolbar Zoom toolbar 3-D View toolbar	
CascadeTile Tile Arrange Icons Toolbars Main toolbar Add Object toolbar Layer toolbar Selection toolbar Zoom toolbar 3-D View toolbar Wireframe	195 195 195 195 195 195 195 196 196 196 196 197
Cascade Tile Arrange Icons Toolbars Main toolbar Add Object toolbar Layer toolbar Selection toolbar Zoom toolbar 3-D View toolbar Wireframe Show Silkscreen	



Project panel	. 198
DRC/ERC panel	. 198
Context Panes	199
Pin properties	. 199
Component properties	. 199
Polygon properties	.200
Text properties	. 200
Dialog Boxes	201
About Dialog	.201
Add Text Dialog	.201
Board Configuration Dialog	. 202
Change Grid Dialog	. 203
Component Property Page	. 204
Create New Library Dialog	. 205
ECO Report Dialog	. 206
Find Object Dialog	. 207
Key Assignments Dialog	. 207
Line Width Dialog	. 208
Load Part Dialog (simple mode)	. 209
Load Part Dialog (advanced mode)	.210
Load Selection Dialog	.211
Manage Library Dialog	. 212
Merge Nets Dialog	.214
Net Property Page	. 215
Package Print Dialog	.216
Pin Property Page	. 217
Board outline Property Page	. 218
Print Artwork Dialog	. 219
Report Dialog	. 220
Save Footprint Dialog	. 221
Save Template Dialog	. 222
Select Color Popup	. 222
Text Property Page	. 222

______11 •



Track Property Page	224
Update Components Dialog	224
User Preferences General Page	
User Preferences Display Page	
User Preferences Layer Colors Page	
User Preferences Routing and Spacing Rules Page	229
Zoom To Coordinate Dialog	
Shortcuts	233
Key Assignments	235
Accelerated Designs' Ultralib Parts Definitions	237
Footprint Patterns: (Construction Standard)	237
Units of Measure:	
Entites and Attributes:	237
Component Naming Conventions:	
Library Construction:	238
Naming of padstacks start with a shape designator as follows:	239
Placement Points:	239
Attributes:	239
Component Naming Conventions:	
Silkscreen Data:	
Vendor Neutral Format from Accelerated Designs Inc.:	240
Known Issues	241
Schematic symbol does not update after editing	241
Netlist files with spaces in part type names	241

-



Overview

Introduction

Thank you for your interest in PCB123. With Version 5, Sunstone has fulfilled its commitment to create a PCB design system that delivers superior productivity against other systems regardless of price. In one program, it delivers all the tools needed to complete a printed circuit board from concept to manufacturing.

Version 5 is the culmination of effort to streamline the entire PCB design process and yields a system that is quite unlike any other. PCB layout and schematics not only reside in the same application but also are two isomorphic views of the same database. A netlist is no longer the interface between the two applications. As you create a schematic, you are creating a PCB. If you don't want to bother creating a schematic, then just create your board and let PCB123 create the schematic for you. Data edits are bidirectional with either side updating the other. Most of the synchronizing is done transparently but some edits required that special facilities be created to ensure both the logical (schematics) and physical (Layout) views stay isomorphic. In fact, loading a pre-version-3 PCB123 file into version 5 will result in the automatic generation of a companion schematic. Likewise, starting a new design either using a netlist from another system or simply creating a PCB from scratch by manually placing new components and drawing the traces will result in a schematic that is automatically created and is continuously updated as the PCB is updated.

We are extremely pleased you are reading this guide because it is jam packed with tips and techniques to maximize both your productivity and the quality of your PCB.

Software features out of the box

With the PCB123 software you installed, you will be able to create a multi-page schematic by placing symbols that represent complete parts or sections of a part such as a gate, and then hooking them up with wires and special port symbols such as power and ground symbols.

Locating parts has never been easier. The part database is structured as a taxonomy, which can be navigated in a tree or can be searched by typing in search criteria. Parts can contain a rich set of properties, all of which are searchable. This means you can search for a part by number (distributor or manufacturer) or by some characteristic such as "4.99K, 1%".

With PCB123 V4, you now have access to a fully defined set of parts libraries, delivering over 500,000 parts with schematic symbols, footprints, manufacturer and Digi-Key ordering information, and links to data sheets available immediately after installation. This parts library, derived directly from the Accelerated Designs Inc, Ultralib product, is made available to PCB123 from Accelerated Designs, Inc., an industry leader in electronic parts definition development.

Placing a part so its pins touch the pins of a different part will automatically generate wires between the pins as long as they are allowed by the rules. For instance, a power pin cannot be tied to a ground pin,



and an NC pin (no connect) cannot be tied to anything. Wires can also be added by clicking on a pin or an existing wire (adding a junction) and then simply moving the mouse to the other pin/wire/junction and clicking again. This will automatically draw a wire that obeys the expected aesthetics. The auto-wiring feature is invoked when an already-connected symbol is moved or rotated. Even high-pin-count symbols are neatly rewired as they are moved around. Even though auto-wiring is always in effect, you can also digitize corners exactly where you want them.

At any point, you may flip over to the PCB view and you will see the new parts and their wires located at the system origin. You can select AutoPlace to rapidly position parts on the board. AutoPlace will attempt to minimize the overall interconnect distance between components while also locating the components in a reasonably aesthetic pattern. You can then examine and adjust the placement to perform local optimizations and enforce any special placement requirements that you may have.

At this point, you may choose to autoroute the design. The autorouter will first escape surface mount pins to a via (a plated hole) to allow the router unrestricted access to all routing layers and or to connect to any internal plane layers. After fanout, the main autorouter will engage which attempts to add traces between objects that must be connected together. In many cases, the autorouter may not complete 100% of the connections or it may do so by using a topology that is unacceptable to you. In these cases, or in the event you just want to route the board completely by hand, there are very efficient editing tools to complete the task.

While manual routing or performing other PCB editing tasks by hand, a Design Rule Check (DRC) is performed in real-time and you will see DRC error markers come and go as you create and fix DRC violations. Whether autorouted or manually routed, you can choose at any stage to run the Gloss command to remove redundant corners, segments, and vias.

You not only have the ability to designate internal plane layers, but you can also choose to view them as positive or negative images. In addition, you may wish to fill in unoccupied areas on the routing layers of the board with copper planes. These copper planes are typically assigned to a net, such as GND. Pins assigned to the same net, which appear inside the region, will be connected to the copper plane. It does so not with a direct hit between the plane and the pin, but through thermal reliefs to aid soldering.

Nomenclature may be added to the board as copper or on silkscreen layers using text strings or drawn polygonal features.

A full DRC (Design Rule Check) can be run on the board when it is believed to be complete. A full DRC will check for violations of net rules such as adherence to minimum spacing requirements, shorts, and opens. It will also check for possible manufacturing problems such as drill excursions into SMD features, silkscreen in holes or on SMD features, and even isolated pins in copper pour regions.

It is recommended that a final visual check of the PCB be done by selecting File > Print Artwork. Here you can print individual layers for review.

At any time, either the schematic or the layout may undergo component or net additions, deletions, or changes and the other synchronizes. This makes tasks such as adjusting the number of decoupling capacitors based on available real estate or routing density a snap.

Finally, when the design is complete you can press the Order button to begin the process of getting your circuit boards manufactured.



User Extendibility

In addition to the core system, PCB123 Version 5 includes a Plugin interface that allows point tools to be added at anytime. The Plugin SDK exposes the complete PCB object database for random access and allows for the processing of virtually all PCB123 software events. In addition to editing PCB objects, developers will be able to call upon code libraries such as the 2D geometry library (over 800 analytical operations on 2D objects) and the spatial database and DRC engine.

The SDK includes a 120-page manual, code libraries and the header files that describe the various PCB123 objects and resources. There is also a Microsoft Visual Studio Application Wizard that builds a working Plugin complete with TODO comments and example code for many scenarios. It also includes the full source code for a couple of the actual Plugins that are shipped with PCB123. These include a connection density analyzer which plots estimated route density as a function of color in a separate window and a Plugin that minimizes the angular deflection of all route corners and therefore also shortens route length. It does so without causing DRC violations. We hope that over time many creative and productive Plugins will be developed by you, the user, to share or sell to the PCB123 community.

One eye on the future

First, a quick note on some capabilities that didn't quite make it into this initial release of the new schematics facility but are certainly expected in an upcoming release. The two main capabilities are bussing and hierarchical designs. The two features share the common requirement of a bus pin/port object. The hierarchical capabilities will be implemented as sub-circuits which get flattened immediately for logical/physical synchronization. You will be able to place one or more instances of a pre-existing schematic page from any design into another schematic page and it will be represented as a symbol with pins that correspond to special ports placed in the hierarchical page.

We would like to point out some of the less obvious benefits that the full integration of schematics and layout make possible. Aside from the fact that a netlist is a static snapshot of a schematic at a given time, a netlist also strips all the information from the schematic other than the net graphs. We can point to one example where some of the semantic information from the schematic has been confidently and successfully hoisted into PCB123 layout and that is with the automatic assignment of large net widths for nets that are attached to voltage and ground port symbols. This indicates there may be convenient, logical paradigms for visually documenting and conveying special net and component rules right in the schematic that layout will honor.

Proximity information is another example of information that is lost in a netlist. It is possible to bias the autoplacer with symbol proximity data from the schematic. Along those lines, if a schematic sub-circuit was placed and even routed in layout then that sub-circuit could then be replicated via copy and paste or through hierarchical instantiation, and the new circuit's physical layout would be exactly relative to its original source circuit including any routing.

The benefits can work the other way too. If a SPICE simulator is hypothetically bolted on to PCB123, the simulator would have access to the exact characteristics of the routing topology of a net by simply asking



layout and getting an instantaneous response. Signal integrity problems could not only be identified much faster than using separate tools but the iterative process of simulate-analyze-tweak could actually be replaced by driving special tools in layout with the simulation results that take corrective action on the routing topology. This hysteretic optimizing process could be run until it converges on correctness or raises a red flag with a high degree of confidence that a real problem exists.

Our Commitment

Our business model has worked quite well and you can see with this release our commitment to delivering state-of-the-art productive tools to you. We are really excited about the technology and see the possibilities limited only by yours and our imaginations.

With the release of the Plugin SDK we have taken another giant step toward openness and look forward to the prospect that you, the user, may now directly contribute to the product and help guide it into niches that may otherwise be under-served.

This especially includes the development of translators to and from the various other CAD systems that you use and know well. We understand you may have a substantial investment in some of these systems and we are not looking to replace them, only augment your company's design capacity and flexibility in the most economical way. We will always provide this ever-improving software for free to equip all engineers and designers with the tools they need to at least try their ideas at work or at home without starting in red ink.

Our revenue is realized only when your ideas are realized.

Happy engineering, from Sunstone's PCB123 division!

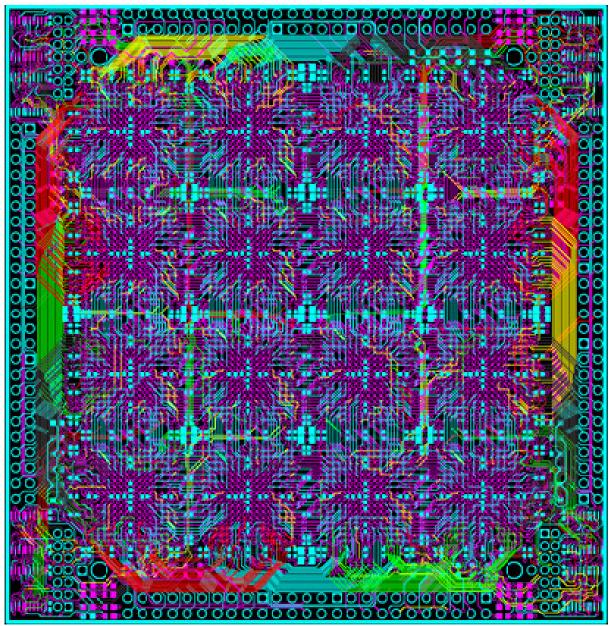


-





Part 1 - Getting Started



If this design were music, it would be a Bach Canon

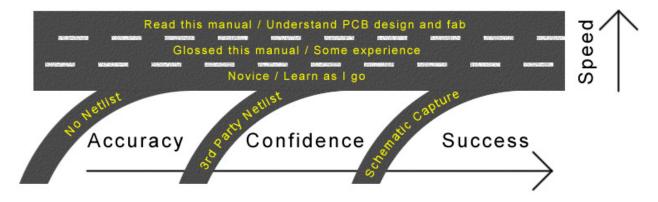
Introduction

Who are you and why did you download this software? Are you an electrical engineer with a new idea for a product? Are you perhaps an expert PCB designer who was just handed a netlist, board outline, and a set of datasheets and requirements? Maybe you are a hobbyist with a soldering iron and a burning need to bring to life that cool circuit you found in a magazine.

Your software requirements and your domain knowledge may vary greatly but one thing in common is the need for designing and ordering circuit boards that work the first time.

Rather than penalize the experienced engineer or designer with a tool aimed at the lowest common denominator, and rather than traumatize the novice with endless data prep requirements and rigid methodologies PCB123 provides a great deal of flexibility to get started and many powerful features to get you to the finish line.

Starting out is easy but reading this guide will allow you to unlock the full power of the software and greatly increase your productivity. It not only explains the operation of the software but delves into process, ergonomics, and tricks of the trade.



There are many automatic features that are always present and available but they are designed so as not to be intrusive or restrictive. For instance, when routing a trace you will instantly get a visual clue if you create a short to another object or violate minimum spacing requirements. You will not be prevented from continuing but a small marker is left behind to remind you that there is a problem at that location. The marker is removed as soon as the violation is cleared.

The software does not second guess your intent. The system performs an extensive design audit before you submit the design for fabrication but you never have to meet some threshold of system-determined correctness to order boards. It will not however allow you to specify or design with impossible-to-meet criteria such as routes that are less than 0.005" thick.

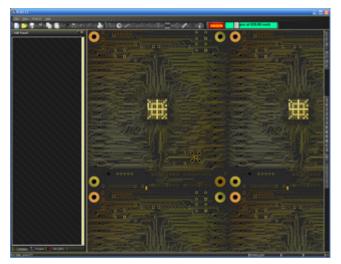
One of the most important reasons for reading this guide before you start an actual design is to prevent bad habits from forming early by being aware of all the different ways in which you can perform common editing tasks. For instance, though you can change to a new layer by clicking on a screen element you will find that it is much more efficient to type the layer number instead. There are many time-saving shortcuts that are less than obvious by just looking at the screen. Once these shortcuts are learned, you will find that you can operate at a continuous fast pace with one hand on the keyboard and the other



clicking the mouse buttons and spinning that mouse wheel. If your mouse doesn't have a wheel or something thereof, we recommend you obtain one to operate at maximum speed. In no time, you will have memorized the few keyboard accelerators and mouse techniques that comprise the vast majority of editing operations. After that, editing and other operations such as panning and zooming become so automatic that you will not even be aware of doing them. In fact, if you use other CAD systems you may become acutely aware of the extra click or key-press that the other system may require.

The vast majority of editing operations are done with just a few keys and mouse actions. However, there are also wealth of less common operations that are available by clicking the right mouse button to invoke context-based menus.

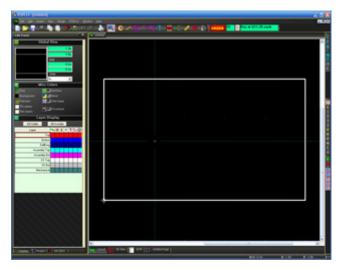
Before we get into specifics, you may find it useful to have PCB123 running to so you can orient this guide against the actual software. If you run it, you should close the splash screen and the New Board Wizard that appear on startup.



Just to make sure we are starting from the same point, you should see a screen that looks similar to the image on the left.

Click the File menu and select New, or click on this it toolbar button.

This will invoke the Board Configuration dialog which will be discussed later. For now, just press OK to accept the defaults.



If your screen looks similar to the picture on the left then you are ready to explore the design space.



Screen Layout

More than one project at a time can be loaded into PCB123 and data can be copied between them. Each project loaded will appear as a tab at the top of the main window. Only one project can be active at any

📟 NewBoard1 📟 NewBoard2

time and if more that one is loaded, the active project can be changed by clicking on its tab. Tabs from a 2-project session are shown left.

Each project will have a minimum of four different views that can be displayed in the main window. They are Layout, 3D View, BOM (Bill Of Materials), and at least one schematic page. You can navigate between



the views by clicking on the appropriate tab at the bottom of the main window. The strip of tabs is shown left.

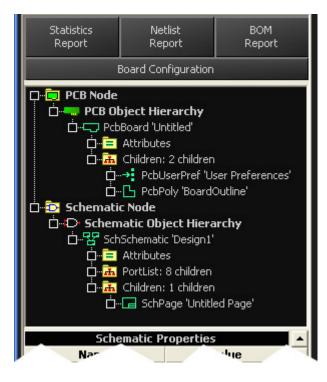
As you change views, different toolbars will come and go as different views are activated.

To the left of the main window is the Edit Panel. It too contains a strip of tabs on the bottom as shown to

10 Table 1	212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (1997) - 212 (
🙋 Display	🔁 Project 🛃 DRC/ERC 🖡
	Te molece i enclance i

the left. The Display tab is quite dynamic, changing its contents not only when the main window is switched between schematics and layout, but when certain types of objects are being edited

context panes will be added and removed that provide various options for the selected object or tool.



The Project tab contains several report generators and a top-level navigator in the form of a tree that allows you to drill down into the schematic and layout data in minute detail. It also contains many top-level settings and defaults such as title block parameters that can be set for a project.

The DRC/ERC tab contains a live listing of all the current design violations in the project.

As you can see, tabs are used extensively to display applicable tools and information and hide irrelevant tools and information for a given task.

Common functionality

Common functionality really refers to the common operations between the schematic view and the layout view. The 3D view and BOM view are highly specialized views that demand very little face time. By far, the design views will receive most of your attention so we will focus on the common functionality between them.

A good deal of your time in the software will be spent moving the mouse around, poking the keyboard, and clicking on things. We hope we have created a fairly intuitive user interface but even so, we should cover some basic behavior.

Pan and Zoom

Because a PCB or a schematic can have a large number of objects packed into a small area it is next to impossible to do any work while viewing the entire extents of the data. Instead, you will want to be zoomed into and focused on a small area. Consequently, you will be doing a lot of panning and zooming. These operations are so common they become reflexive actions - you do not think about it, you just do it.

First, under the View menu a Zoom submenu lists all the commands pertaining to zoom. The first four

Zoom <u>I</u> n	PgUp
Zoom <u>O</u> ut	PgDn
Zoom <u>A</u> ll	Home
Actual Size	
Pan <u>U</u> p	UpArrow
Pan <u>L</u> eft	LeftArrow
Pan <u>R</u> ight	RightArrow
Pan <u>D</u> own	DownArrow
Redraw	End
	*

commands pertain to the view scale or zoom factor.

Zoom In and Zoom Out magnify and... um... un-magnify the view. Using the menu commands or their keyboard accelerators, PgUp and PgDn, scale the zoom factor based on the ubiquitous Golden Ratio beloved since eternity. Using the mouse wheel scales the zoom factor by smaller increments.

Zoom All adjusts the zoom factor and view center so the entire board outline fits within the viewport.

The Zoom Actual Size command, which is not accelerated, relies on your display hardware to accurately report the number of pixels per inch of display and uses that factor to scale the view accordingly.

The next four menu items pan, or scroll the view north, east, south, and west. The pan distance using these menu commands or their keyboard accelerators is the width or height of the window minus a comfortable overlap figure. Besides the obvious reasons for the overlap, it is interesting to note that panning by a full window can actually produce a "lost" sensation at times.

The Redraw command will simply refresh the screen. It also rebuilds certain internal lookup tables and in rare situations, when you add or modify objects so their new extents are double or triple the size of the board you may find that you cannot pick them until a Redraw is performed or any number of other commands that trigger a regeneration of the tables is performed.



Drilling into submenus is probably not the most efficient way to navigate around a design but Microsoft recommends standard practices and we try to oblige. The menu also shows the keyboard accelerators for the zoom commands. ● ● **■ ◎ Ⅲ G** № 2

There is also a Zoom toolbar on the right edge of the application. It is lacking buttons for pan but there are stock scrollbars for that. The button labeled 'G' is not actually a zoom command at all. It is a way to invoke the Grid dialog using the mouse. As with most toolbars, you may hover your mouse over a button to pop up a tooltip for a brief description of the button's operation. The Zoom Toolbar contains some of the lesser used commands such as Refresh Screen, Zoom All, and Zoom Actual Size. The Zoom Toolbar is for new users who don't read the manual. You, however, deserve better.

1 End	Refresh Screen
2 ↓	Pan Down
3 PgD	Zoom Out
4 ↓	Pan Left
€ ↓	Pan Right
7 Hom	Zoom All
	Pan Up
9 PgU	Zoom In

Most likely you will find that using the keyboard to perform zoom operations is superior to the menu and toolbar. The numeric keypad is dedicated to the zoom functions. The chart on the left shows the keypad assignments for the different zoom commands.

By far, the best way to pan and zoom around the design canvas is to use the wheel on your mouse if it has one. The wheel can accomplish both pan and zoom. To zoom in, roll the wheel forward and to zoom out, roll it back toward you. The pan behavior is a byproduct of how Zoom In and Out work with the wheel. Wherever the mouse is pointing in the design window becomes the new viewport center. Zooming in and out actually does a pan so that whatever you were pointing at is now in the

middle of the screen. The closer the mouse already is to the center, the finer the pan behavior. You point the cursor in the direction you want to pan and spin the wheel. It becomes very natural in just a short time.

There is one additional behavior to mention. If you hold down the Shift key while moving the mouse in the main window then the window will smoothly pan in real-time.

Names and Numbers

Objects such as nets and components require unique names. Other objects may be optionally named or, in the case of PCB component pins, if they are named the names must be unique just within the component. In general, most objects that require a name will in fact have a name auto-generated during interactive design. Object names will be upper case and they currently will be restricted to the ANSI character set. There are no restrictions on name lengths.

character set due to the stroked font requirements for Gerber data.

In general, if you name an object do not include any spaces or other non-printable characters in the name. Whitespace, `|', `&', `[', and `]' are reserved characters and will be replaced with an underscore `_'.



Unless absolutely necessary, names should not begin with numerical digits. There is nothing inherent in PCB123 for this, but names that begin with numbers may generate XML validation errors in 3rd party Plugins or future PCB123 facilities.

The basic unit of measurement internal to PCB123 is $1/10,000,000^{\text{th}}$ of an inch (one ten-millionth). This ensures that no conversion routines are required when switching between metric and imperial user units as the round off is insignificant. It does however mean that the extent of the world coordinate system is limited to +/- 200 inches as coordinates are stored as 32-bit integers. A 400-inch domain is more than sufficient for PCB boards and schematics but be careful if you intend to use the software for other purposes.

When you supply values for physical parameters and coordinates, the values you enter are assumed to be in whatever the current system units are in. Additionally, four suffixes may be used when entering numeric data that allow an absolute unit basis to be specified. The table below lists these suffixes and shows examples of their use.

Suffix	Description	Example
in	Inches	0.109in, -0.00002in
mil	Mils (1,000 th of an inch)	109mil, -0.02mil
cm	Centimeters	0.27686cm, -0.0000508cm
mm	Millimeters	2.7686mm, 0.000508mm

Anywhere the system asks for a physical value such as the Grid dialog box or a pad size form, you can perform local overrides of the current system units by supplying the appropriate suffix with the value.

Function	Description
abs(n)	Absolute value of n
acos(n)	Arccosine (in degrees) of n
asin(n)	Arcsine (in degrees) of n
atan(n)	Arctangent (in degrees) of n
sin(deg)	sine of (degrees) deg
cos(deg)	cosine of (degrees) deg
tan(deg)	tangent of (degrees) deg
log(n)	Natural log of n
log10(n)	Base-10 log of n
log2(n)	Base-2 log of n
sqrt(n)	Square root of n

Any physical value can be entered as an expression so long as the terms are all in the same units. Expressions obey the C/C++ (normal) rules of operator precedence and associatively. Besides the arithmetic operators +, -, *, /, %(mod) the table to the left lists the functions that can be used in an expression.

The ability to use expressions can come in very handy when creating footprints since most mechanical drawings of parts use relative dimensioning.

The following table shows several examples for converting between polar coordinates and Cartesian coordinates.

Objective problem	What to type (in red)
To locate an object at 15 degrees on a circle centered at (0, 0)	X = 2in*cos(15)
and has a radius of 2 inches.	Y = 2in*sin(15)



To locate an object at 15 degrees on a circle centered at (4	X=(2in*cos(15))+4.0
inches, 2 inches) and has a radius of 2 inches.	Y = (2in*sin(15)) + 2.0

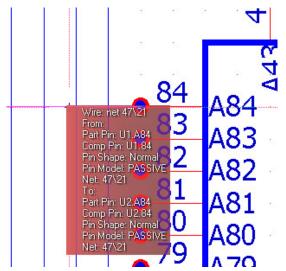
Selection

Important: PCB123 differs from many applications in how it treats a mouse click, where a click means pressing and releasing the left mouse button. In many popular applications, clicking on an object selects that object and waits for some operation to be performed on it.

In PCB123 a click almost universally selects the object and immediately assumes a move operation on it – it is essentially tied to the cursor until another click releases it. If you hold down the Ctrl key when clicking on an object then it behaves like other applications and simply performs a select on it. In fact, multiple objects can be clicked and selected (or deselected) by holding down the Ctrl key while clicking objects.

The way other applications accommodate an immediate move operation on an object is with a mouse drag, which involves pressing the left mouse button and moving the mouse while the button remains depressed. In most cases, PCB123 will accommodate that behavior too.

The reason for the departure from standard click behavior is for sheer efficiency. A schematic document and especially a PCB document may contain many objects – tens of thousands in some cases. For this reason, any paradigm that shaves a click off an operation translates into a large cumulative gain in productivity. The details of the efficiency gains are covered under Object Editing later in this document.



As you move the cursor over objects in the design window you will notice they become temporarily highlighted. This is just a visual acknowledgement of which object will be selected if you were to click on it. If you let the cursor hover over an object you will get a tooltip displaying various properties of the object. The tooltip is translucent so as not to fully obscure objects beneath it. The image to the left shows a highlighted wire and its properties in a tooltip.

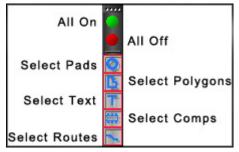
Holding the Ctrl key down while clicking on objects performs a disjoined selection. Perform a continuous selection by sweeping out a rectangular area that involves pressing the left mouse button down on a spot that contains no objects, dragging until the rectangle

encompasses the objects you wish to select, and then releasing the left mouse button. Hold down the Ctrl key while doing so toggles the selection state of the objects.



Objects are not automatically selectable. Objects that are set to invisible, either by object type or layer visibility will not highlight, nor are they selectable.

Additionally, the Layout view has a toolbar, shown at right, which allows the selection of PCB object types to be toggled on or off. This can be very useful to prevent the accidental selection of some object types while performing certain tasks. For instance, while routing traces it can be a nuisance to miss picking a track by just a little and picking a component instead because it will begin moving the component off of any existing routes to the component pins. Of course you can always cancel the operation.



Context Menus



Pressing the Right Mouse Button (RMB) will always display a context menu populated with commands that are applicable to the current selection. If nothing was selected then an implied selection is carried out on the object the cursor was pointing to when the RMB occurred.

Like the tooltip, the context menu (shown left) is translucent to prevent objects underneath the menu from being obscured.

If several different types of objects are selected, the context menu may contain submenus for commands that operate on the different object types. Submenus are indicated by a right-pointing, right-justified arrow and will be displayed when the menu item is highlighted.

In addition to the mouse, the arrow keys may be used to select different menu items.

While a menu is active, all other activity in PCB123 is suspended until a menu selection is made or the menu cancelled.

Commands

PCB123 supports most of the common Windows editing commands such as Cut, Copy, and Paste. Currently, these commands are specialized to perform data interchange only between PCB123 documents.

Undo and Redo is fully supported in PCB123 with one caveat: you cannot undo or redo a schematic edit while in Layout view, and vice versa. Undo and redo are unlimited as long as you remain in either view but as soon as you flip to the other view then undo and redo are flushed.

Starting a New Design

As previously mentioned, PCB123 attempts to accommodate a wide audience of which everyone, regardless of experience, needs to design a PCB. Your project may be using the most common off-the-shelf components and may need to fit in a standard housing but you still need to design that one custom part - the PCB. Because it is custom, the burden falls largely on you to ensure its correct design and operation. Good design software and good design practices will greatly aid you in this effort.

PCB123 allows for the specification of rules that can ensure manufacturability and design continuity. Some of these rules can even be used to guarantee adherence to certain standards bodies' rules such as the UL requirements for minimum spacing between nets of certain voltage potentials.

There are issues associated with PCB design that can be extremely complex and are beyond the scope of this guide. As a rule of thumb, if you need to incorporate the electrical or temporal effects that the PCB has on nets as a function of the routing topology (transmission lines, crosstalk, emissions) then you may require more sophisticated (and very expensive) layout tools than PCB123 unless you are at an expert level in such matters. We do not have a button that ensures FCC compliance for your design but we do have a button that ensures everything is hooked up where it should be and nothing is shorted together. We also have a facility so *you* can add a button to ensure FCC compliance of a design by writing a Plugin that operates on the PCB data in any way you desire.

PCB123 will automatically detect and report many of the problems that may arise during the design process. Even so, there are many places where the software cannot second-guess intent. How much checking the software will do, and even how much time the software can save you by performing some tasks automatically can be a direct result of how much information you supply PCB123 at the start of a design. First, let us look at the gross tasks involved in designing a board in PCB123.

Overview of PCB design tasks

Here is a quick list of the different tasks involved in designing a PCB. For now, it ignores how the design data is acquired and input into the system. It assumes you have already designed a schematic in PCB123 or input a netlist from another tool. This is covered in detail in the next section.

The tasks are generally in chronological order but your design or your favorite techniques may differ slightly. The basic tasks are:

Using either the <u>New Board Wizard</u> or the <u>Board Configuration Dialog</u>, specify any manufacturing requirements for your design. These include the number of layers in the design, whether you desire soldermask and/or silkscreen on your boards, and certain non-standard requirements such as board thickness or copper weight. Some features are mutually exclusive and will be clearly indicated as such. All the configuration options can be changed at any time and are only finalized when ordering. However, some options can greatly impact the design rules which, if going from a less to a more restrictive set of rules, can be much more difficult to deal with in the later stages of a design. Examples of this would be specifying less layers than actually routed on, or changing from standard 1oz. copper to 2.5oz copper which requires greater spacing



and feature sizes to properly etch the thicker copper clad. Incidentally, if you are new to this, then the concept of "adding layers" or "deleting layers" may be confusing to you. A PCB may have more than a front layer and a back layer. Two or more circuit boards can be independently etched and then carefully aligned and glued together, one on top of the other with an insulator between them. These boards are then drilled as one and the holes are then plated. The plated holes allow copper from one layer to be connected to copper on different layers. PCB123 handles 2, 4, and 6-layer boards as a standard process. For boards with more layers than that, you are requested to send the design to Sunstone for quick evaluation. You will then receive back the same design with the desired number of layers enabled and an adjusted price quote.

- After the basic board configuration has been specified, ensure the size and shape of your board outline is correct. Closely associated with this is to correctly define and position any mounting holes or other hardware and to position any fixed electrical devices such as connectors, LEDs, and switches. In short, make sure the board will fit in a chassis or enclosure, that it can be secured in place if needed, and that any lights or dials that mount on the PCB are visible or accessible through openings in the enclosure.
- Identify the electronic components that your design will use and either map them to "footprints" from our supplied libraries or create any custom footprints as needed. A footprint is a reusable stencil that defines the pattern of copper pads, drill holes, and silkscreen information such as the component outline and a reference designator (name) for the component.
- Place all the components on the board so they don't overlap or violate any special criteria that you may have such as height restrictions or proximity requirements such as locating filters near connectors or other sources. Once the critical mechanical and electrical requirements have been considered, the remaining components typically want to be placed in a way that minimizes the overall interconnect distance between components. Some components may require additional room around them to ensure there all the pins can be connected with routes. It is also desirable to place the components on as coarse a grid as possible. If all the pads are on a regular grid, then routing the board is much faster and easier because you will not have to make as many small bends around pads.
- Distribute power and ground. Ensure the supply pins on semiconductors are properly decoupled by placing decoupling capacitors in close proximity to the supply pins. Bulk decoupling or filtering may want to happen close to the connector pins or devices supplying power to the entire board. If the board will have dedicated copper plane layers for power and ground then those nets should be assigned to the proper plane layers. If two or more nets are to share a plane layer but still be isolated from each other (called a split plane) then the isolation needs to be manually drawn on that plane layer. Surface mounted devices may need to have their power and ground pins routed out to a plated-through-hole that ties the surface pad to a plane layer. If the power and ground is to be distributed with routes and not plane layers, then they should be routed using traces that are wide enough to handle the required amount of power. Redundant routing in the form of a matrix may also be desired at the board extremities or at some regular interval to keep voltage levels uniform across all devices.



- If any signal nets have critical requirements such as complimentary routing or matched/critical length, or they require special attention such as pin-to-pin route sequencing, then these nets should be routed before other nets.
- Route all the remaining interconnections. This can be the most time consuming task in PCB design and there are many strategies that can be used. One strategy that is almost always a winner is to assign a direction to a routing layer. There can be a lot of flexibility in this, but by routing mostly vertical on one layer, and horizontal on a different layer, you will be much less likely to create blockages for layer routing. The layers will have a "flow" to them and changing between layers by using vias as the routing direction changes can typically utilize the layers much more efficiently. If your design is moderately to very dense, and a sizable percentage of it uses surface mounted devices, then you can expect that the surface layer(s) will be consumed by short routes that escape a surface pin to a via (a plated drill hole) to effectively allow that pin to be routed on any layer. This process is known as Fanout routing and should be done before bulk routing. It is not only a time saver for bulk routing but can be an early indicator of problems. If you cannot fanout a device then you most likely will not be able to completely route that device without making more room around it, adjusting its location, or adding more routing layers. It is much better to discover these kinds of problems earlier than later. Moving a component after it has been routed hurts more than moving it before it was routed. Additionally, you may have struggled to route most of a dense design only to find that you need two more routing layers to complete the rest of it. Knowing this up front would have made the routing easier right from the beginning.
- When all routing is finished, you may wish to improve power and ground distribution or provide ground shielding by flooding regions of the board with a copper plane that is tied to a power or ground net. Any object in the region that does not belong to a net, or has a net other than that of the copper region will be automatically isolated from the copper region. These regions are collectively known as copper pour.
- The next task will be to perform a Design Rule Check (DRC) and address any problems that it
 may have uncovered. The DRC will report on shorts, opens, and violations of manufacturing rules
 such as minimum spacing between objects of different nets, and pad size vs. drill size violations.
 Some reported violations such as problems with the silkscreen can be ignored at this stage but
 certainly DRC violations on routing layers and plane layers should be addressed at this stage.
- If your board is to have silkscreen on it, then you will want to place the component reference designators so they can be seen after the board is populated with components. This usually involves moving the reference designators outside the component outlines but close enough to the correct component to prevent an ambiguous reading of which name belongs to which component. You may also wish to add other nomenclature to your design such as the name of the board, a company logo, jumper configurations, or other wording or drawings. Nomenclature can be added to copper layers and silkscreen layers. If text is added to the bottom routing layer or bottom silkscreen then that text should be "mirrored" so it will read correctly when the finished board is flipped over in your hand to observe the back. After adding your nomenclature, you will want to run an additional DRC to make sure you didn't short anything together or create silkscreen on any pads.



 As a final check, you may wish to view your design in 3-D. PCB123's photorealistic 3-D viewer may allow you to visually spot problems that DRC assumes are correct. Because it displays the board in perspective and from any viewing angle, certain errors such as wrong/missing drill sizes or unreadable silkscreen text tend to really stand out compared to looking only at the orthogonal 2-D view. Once you are satisfied that it looks correct and DRC is reporting no errors then you can press the Order button which guides you through the order process. Depending on the board complexity and the time of day you placed the order, you will receive your boards anywhere from 2-5 business days later.

Data Requirements

PCB123 provides a host of tools to complete all the different tasks but many of them are highly dependent on how you specify or acquire the design data. This can be broken into two methods: with a schematic, or without a schematic. To be even more specific, your design has been "captured" inside a schematic program, or your design resides on a napkin, in a picture, or in your head.

It takes effort to capture a design with schematic software but this effort usually pays great dividends. Unless your design is extremely simple and involves only a few parts, it is strongly recommended that you create an electronic schematic of the design before attempting layout. PCB123 provides a schematic capture facility that works in lock-step with its layout facility. In addition, PCB123 also is capable of reading and importing netlists that have been generated by other schematic capture programs.

In case you are unfamiliar, a netlist is a file that lists all the components used in a design and defines how those components are connected together. A component, or part, is usually specified in a netlist as a name/type pair. A component name, or reference designator, typically consists of an alpha prefix and a numerical suffix such as R1 or U15. Reference designators must be unique in a design. The component type, or part type, might appear as anything from a proprietary description such as RES_33-OHM_1/4W to a manufacturer's part number such as SN74LS00N. In some cases, the component may also be augmented with additional data such as the name of a standard package or footprint for the part. After all, a 33-ohm, 1/4 watt resistor can come in many physical sizes and shapes. The connectivity information in a netlist is usually specified at the "net" level. A net has a name such as +5V, GND, or RESET, and has a list of one or more "nodes" or pins in the form of R1.2, which reads "pin 2 of component R1." A net with one node is legal but unusual. The vast majority of nets consist of two or more nodes. A net with two or more nodes inside PCB123 will be displayed as pin-to-pin wires that must be connected by a continuous copper path or plane.

Until PCB123 V3, a netlist was the traditional data transport from a schematic program to a layout program. For the first time, PCB123 eliminates the netlist as a data transport as long as the schematic was designed in, or converted to a PCB123 schematic. A schematic designed in PCB123 has a more intimate relationship with the layout than does a netlist from another program. Using a netlist from a different schematic program has the following disadvantages:

• A netlist is a static snapshot of a schematic at a particular moment in time. If changes are made to the schematic then a new netlist must be generated that reflects the changes. If the PCB layout is already in progress, then the PCB must be synchronized with the new netlist. Luckily

32 •



there are facilities for this but if the schematic was created in PCB123 to begin with, any change to it is instantly reflected in the layout and vice-versa.

- A netlist is not certain to contain part references that are known to PCB123. These unknown
 references must be resolved. This can actually be done interactively while reading the netlist
 because whenever an unknown part type is encountered, you will be presented with a browser
 that allows you to find and graphically verify a footprint from a library to use for the part type. A
 native PCB123 schematic, on the other hand, will not even allow a schematic symbol to be placed
 on a page unless it has already defined the PCB footprint it uses, and verifies that the footprint
 can be found in the library.
- Very little context from the schematic is retained in a netlist. That a net is connected to a power
 or ground symbol is not reflected in the netlist. If it were, than that net could automatically be
 made to use fatter routing widths. A PCB123 schematic automatically uses that kind of contextual
 information to adjust the layout rules as needed. A netlist is also missing proximity information or
 any data that indicates how the schematic was organized by page or through a hierarchy. This
 information is expected to be widely used in future releases of PCB123 for such things a
 grouping, replication, and as hints to the autoplacer.
- Changes initiated from the PCB design, such as adding a decoupling capacitor, must be manually performed over in the other schematic program. If this is not done then there will be a mismatch when comparing the two databases and performing another netlist comparison will run the risk of undoing the changes, in this case deleting the newly added decoupling capacitor. As mentioned before, PCB123 always synchronizes changes from either side to the other. There is nothing to remember or relay to someone else.

Despite the disadvantages listed above, using a netlist from another system is far superior than designing a PCB without one. Most schematic programs have some facility for performing an Electrical Rules Check. This can flush out logic errors very early by detecting such things as outputs connected to outputs or anything connected to a pin designated as N/C (not connected). Many schematic programs also host simulators that can verify the correct operation and timing of circuits. Additionally, capturing your design in a PCB123 schematic or in a netlist allows automated tools in layout such as the autoplacer and autorouter to be used. These tools can save hours or days of labor or they can also be used for early decision-making and early identification of problems.

Though PCB123 allows you to create your PCB design using piecewise primitives such as individual pads and line segments, it is not recommended except in the most trivial designs. These designs miss the benefits of context checking and many powerful automatic tools.



The New-Board Wizard

When you first run PCB123, you will first see either a "Latest Information" window or a "Checking for Updates" window, both that assume a connection to the internet. If the computer is not connected to the internet, then a message indicating that fact is displayed.

The "Latest Information" window is a small web page that is periodically updated to reflect new services, promotions or important notices.

Every so often, the software checks if a new version is available for download. If a new version is available, a summary of new features and bug fixes is presented along with the option of downloading and installing the new version. If you continue to run with older software, you will be asked to update about every tenth time you run the software. You can always check for, and install new updates yourself from the PCB123 menu.

After dismissing the "Latest Information" or "Checking for Updates" window, you will be presented with the first step of the "New Board Wizard". If you want to load an existing design or just start fiddling with the software, you can click the Cancel button or press the Esc key to dismiss the wizard.

The New Board Wizard is primarily for new users but many find it useful to begin a new design no matter how long they have used the system. The Wizard has been carried forward from version 2 to version 3 virtually untouched, which makes it a highly board-centric feature. It never even mentions the word 'Schematic' once and PCB123 reserves the right to change the Wizard in the future to make it more Project-centric as other Project-level behavior is defined or requested.

New Board Wizard	×
STEP 1	
Welcome to the PCB123 New Board Wizard	
Enter your board name (required)	
Board Name	
_Netlist File? (optional)	
Browse	
Did you know that PCB123 can load a multi-page netlist by holding down the Shift Key to select multiple netlist files?	
Did you know that you can load Protel, Tango, OrCAD and native PCB123 netlist files?	
Do not show wizard at startup Help Cancel ← Back Next	→

The New Board Wizard has 4 pages of which the first one is shown below:

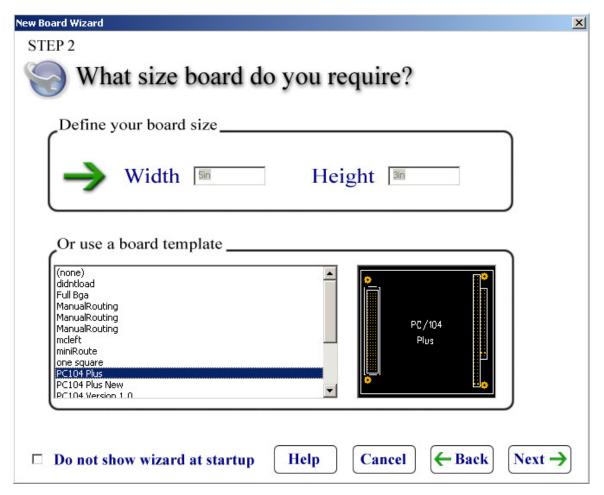
The **Board Name** field is essentially the title of your new design and can be anything as long as it is not empty.

The **Netlist File** field is optional. If you have captured your design in a schematic program other than PCB123, then you can either type the name of the netlist file or, more likely, click on the **Browse.. button** to invoke a standard Windows file dialog box that allows you to navigate to the file. If you do click the browse button, the 'Files of Type' will list all the netlist formats currently recognized by

PCB123. The netlist will not be read until the wizard is finished.



Clicking on the Next button brings you to step 2 as shown below:

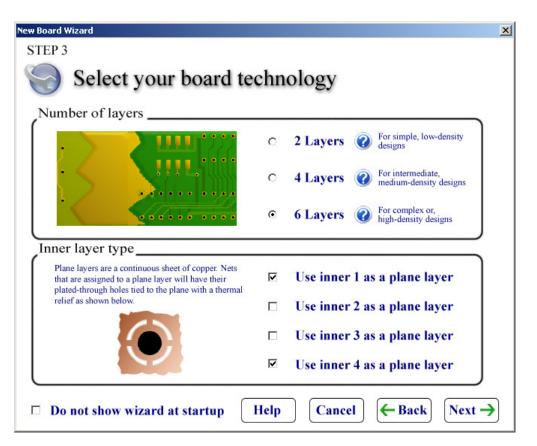


You have a choice of **defining your board size** by entering a rectangular width and height for your board or selecting an existing **board template** supplied by Sunstone, a third party, or created previously by you. When selecting templates, you will get a postage-stamp preview of the template.

Templates most likely will contain a board outline but may also contain tooling holes, dimension lines, title blocks, and even components such as connectors. Because a netlist may define a component and a template may define a component there exists the possibility for a conflict. If they both attempt to load in a component with the same name, then the component in the template wins and will be used in place of the one in the netlist. A warning will be issued to that effect. The template component wins because it contains a more complete specification by including location, rotation, and board-side data.

Step three is where you specify the number of layers in your design and how those layers are used. It appears below:





In the **Number of Layers** section, you can select two, four, or six layers for your design. The default is two layers. Selecting more than two layers will enable the **Inner Layer Type** options. You may need more than two layers because of a mechanical requirements such as high component and interconnect density and unfavorable interconnect topology, or for electrical reasons such as cleaner power distribution and transient return paths, or to form transmission lines on critical nets.

You will have to specify which nets are assigned to the plane layers. Any pin belonging to the specified nets will tie to the plane at a plated hole.

This plane connection does not occur against a solid plane, but instead the plated hole has an isolation gap around it with "spokes" that bridge the gap at certain places. This isolation prevents the plane layer from sinking too much heat during soldering. It focuses the heat on the pin and allows for a clean solder bond.



Step four allows you specify additional board fabrication options as shown below:

New Board Wizard STEP 4	ditional board features	×
Soldermask	sk and Silkscreen	
→ ∞ s	Soldermask 🗵 Silkscreen (over soldermask)	
🕜 co	Soldermask is the green protective coating on the PCB. It is recommended out not required. Silkscreen is the white writing on the PCB used for component reference designators and other artwork such as your logo.	
What PCB	B thickness would you like?	
	0.031" • 0.062" (default)	
What copp	per weight would you like?	
→ • 1.	-oz (default) © 2.5-oz	
THEN	Lead Free	
🗆 Do not sl	show wizard at startup Help Cancel ← Back Finish]

Depending on the number of layers you selected in step three, you may or may not be able to check and uncheck the **Soldermask** button. A six layer board always has a solder mask.

Checking soldermask will enable the **Silkscreen** button. Checking silkscreen will not increase the price of your board unless you also choose to have silkscreen on the back of the board. This can be specified in the Board Configuration Dialog.

The **PCB Thickness** selection allows you to choose between two thicknesses under certain circumstances. By default your board will be 0.062" thick. That is a highly typical board thickness. If your board is only two layers, has soldermask, and is using standard 1oz. copper weight then you have the option of specifying a half-thickness board of 0.031". You most likely only want to check this if your board is small in area because the thinner board material is susceptible to warping and curling, especially if there is an imbalance of copper clad from one side of the board to the other. You most likely will choose a thin board when weight is of primary concern or if a small amount of board flex is required.



The **Copper Weight** selection allows you to choose between two different copper clad weights, but only under specific circumstances. By default your board will have standard 1oz. copper weight but if your design has two layers, soldermask, and is using 0.062" thick material you will have the option of specifying a heavier 2.5oz weight copper clad. The unit measurement of weight represents the number of ounces of copper per some square area. The heavier weight is due to a thicker clad. The thicker clad can carry more current but it comes at the price of increased feature size. Trace width, pad annular size, and spacing requirements all increase by nearly double. The nominal copper line thickness increases from 0.007" to 0.013".

Checking the **Lead Free** checkbox specifies that your design is to use the RoHS fabrication process. This option is free. If your design includes surface mounted components that have high pin counts, such as a BGA, then it is recommended that you check this box because the RoHS process results in superior pad planarity (flat surface).

When you click the **Finish** button, any specified board templates and netlists are loaded. You may be prompted to select which footprint to use for components whose part type is not found in any library or alias list.

A good deal of checking is performed while loading a netlist and if errors are found they will be reported but they will not prevent a design from being created. This may result in a partial load of the netlist so the error log should be checked carefully. It is possible that a netlist format emitted by some host system has changed slightly or does not conform to previously encountered formats. The netlist readers are designed to recover from encounters with unknown data and will attempt to re-sync on known data. Because of this, a netlist may load with errors but the errors are just benign data that the reader did not expect. In any case, check everything carefully when errors are encountered and we encourage you to send us netlists that may have tripped up the system so we can update the reader for that format.

Starting Without the New-Board Wizard

You can skip the New-Board Wizard and just select File-New or click the toolbar. This will present you with the Board Configuration Dialog which is a compact version of the New-Board Wizard. It too allows a netlist to be specified when invoked in response to File/New. The netlist field will subsequently be disabled if this dialog is invoked after a new design has been created. Only the board configuration options will be enabled and can be modified at any time.

Results of Creating a New Design

When the Wizard completes, or the Board Configuration Dialog is dismissed, the system will have created a new design document with the requested number of routing and plane layers, the specified rectangular board or selected board template, and any components and nets specified by either the board template or the netlist.

If a netlist was specified and called in components and nets, then, one or more special schematic pages will have been created that contain an auto-generated symbol for every component on the board. The pins of these symbols may be tied to global ports with the same name as the nets on the board. You will essentially have a matching PCB123 schematic that you can use going forward, though you may also



continue using the original schematic and synchronizing any changes with a netlist. The last task that is performed after loading a netlist will be to run the autoplacer for an initial component spread. It is possible the autoplacer will warn you about the parts not fitting on the board if it is too small to contain all the parts as specified.

If no netlist or board template was specified when creating the new design document, then the only database objects created will have been a board outline and a single schematic page named "Untitled Page". In this case, you can immediately begin designing in one of two ways: smart and safe, or quick and dirty.

- The smart and safe method has you switching to the new schematic page to begin your schematic design.
- The quick and dirty way has you manually instantiating components and routing them with the Freestyle routing tool.

Using either method will result in the complimentary view being updated as changes are made, but the information model is not completely symmetric between the two design methods. A maximum information model is created in both the physical (layout) and logical (schematic) views when objects are created from inside the schematic and not from inside the layout. This is obvious in the case of adding a component to the design. If done from the schematic, the component is most likely defined by a symbol or symbols (in the event of gates) that symbol may be richly attributed with component metadata such as value, tolerance, manufacturer's part number etc. This data will be reflected in such items as the Bill of Materials (BOM). The symbol will also have a reference to the specific PCB footprint to use.

On the other hand, a component that is instantiated inside layout can only auto-generate a corresponding schematic symbol. That symbol will appear as a rectangular box with pins sticking out of it. In the worst case it will only be endowed with a reference designator and a footprint attribute such as SOIC-14. You may instantiate two different resistors inside layout and correctly use them without regard to their possibly different values. This may result in a nearly useless BOM because the two resistors will appear on the same line item without any indication as to their values. The logical and physical views may be isomorphic in regards to electrical continuity, but they are quite different in visual appeal and accurate part metadata.

Default Settings

Whenever, and however, you create a new design, there are a number of software settings that obtain a default value. Most, if not all of these settings are stored directly in a design file when you save a design but how they get their initial values and how the values are subsequently changed is worth mentioning. These settings include display colors and visibility for layers and objects, the current working grid, angle snap grid, full-screen cursor display and a host of other settings. Though these setting are per-document settings, you can specify the values to be used as the default values when a new design is created. This is done through the **User Preferences** dialog.

This dialog contains several pages of controls to adjust various system settings. In addition, it contains buttons at the bottom that allow the entire collection of settings to be saved as a Preference File or a Preference File to be loaded. It also allows a new set of defaults to be established for new designs.



PCB123.ini

🚾 workspace.wsp

PCB123 Directories

When you install the software, whatever directory you specified for the installation is only where the program files were installed.

In addition, a directory tree will be created under

Windows xp: Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\PCB123 or

Windows 7/8: **ProgramData\PCB123** on the system drive.

BackupFiles
 Depending on your system settings, this directory may be hidden from you. However, the PCB123 Installer has created a link file in your **My Documents** folder named
 PCB123 Files. Double-clicking on this file will open a Windows Explorer set to the above directory. You should see a list of files and folders similar to that show on the left.

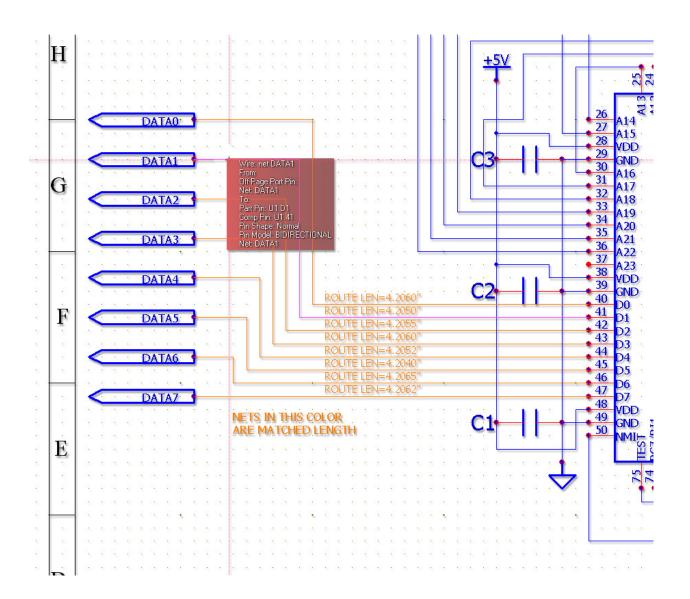
Here is a brief description of the folders:

- BackupFiles This folder is where the interval backups are stored. While you design with PCB123, a backup of your work is done every 10 minutes. The backup filename if the design name plus _Backup#, where # is 1 through 5. A revolving set of the last 5 backups are maintained, with #1 being the most recent. Additionally, if the software crashes, your design will be saved with _Crash appended to the design name. Incidentally, Sunstone has never had a report of lost work or a corrupted design file. Many safeguards are in place for just such an occurrence.
- **Lib** This is where the system libraries are installed. Inside this folder, there is a folder named **Custom,** which is where any libraries that you create will be stored.
- **Designs** This folder has been created for your convenience. You are not required to use it.
- **Preferences** and **BoardTemplates** These directories store saved User Preference sets and Board Templates. There are features in the software that deal with these directories.





Part 2 - Schematic User Guide





The Schematic/PCB Contract

A little background

PCB123's purpose for being is to create a win-win situation for all parties. Customers download the free software and use it to design their products with a guarantee that, so long as they stay within the system parameters, the PCB's will work as designed.

Because the software is developed and maintained on site, Sunstone can continually assess and react both to the customer's needs and to its own internal needs. The business model has allowed a somewhat non-traditional approach to CAD software development. Because revenue derives from the *use* of the software and not the *sale* of the software, less emphasis is placed on software features and more on software throughput. We do not have to beat some competitor by providing a larger bullet list of esoteric features than the other vendor just to make a sale, but we *do* have to ensure that everyone from a novice to an expert can get through their designs to press the Order button. Because we know who will be processing and manufacturing the design (us) we can make certain assumptions where it might simplify the design process for PCB123 users.

This is all wonderful but there comes a point at which we (Sunstone) have to decide how far to take it. The software cannot outpace our manufacturing capabilities, and because customer support is free, we try to refrain from adding low-use features that clutter the software for novices or complex features that are deemed likely to generate a high volume of calls for instructions. There are both good and bad aspects to this method. An example is the new autoplacer tool just added; the only interface to it is the 'Run Autoplace' menu item. If you can click on a menu then you have met the threshold required to use it. This is simple for you and results in predictably less support needed by us. We could expose many of the internal settings that would allow the precisely control the autoplacer, but we know the performance gain that you may realize is too small to justify all the support calls that a dialog box with a bunch of strange settings would generate. Instead, we carefully pick the best values for the most typical boards. Either running the tool will help you, or you select Undo. Unless we can provide a set of options that will affect some major change in strategy, then it would probably not be fair to expose you to something that may burn your time trying to get some last magic adjustment to what is supposed to be a tool for "roughing in" an initial component placement. Win-win is the goal.

Generally, software that we develop will have wide appeal, general use, or transparent behavior. The new Plug-in development environment was, in a way, developed as the ultimate general use feature and a way forward for developing those esoteric tools that you may desire. You can write tools yourself, and it will probably be just a matter of time before a tool development community is forms around the new SDK.

This does not mean we aim at the lowest common denominator. In fact, it is just the opposite. Because our goals are different from those of a traditional CAD vendor, we sometimes arrive at solutions to problems that are quite different from the "traditional" way.

PCB123 Version 3 is a direct result of looking at the problem from a different angle. We know why customers will use the schematic; they will use it with the goal of creating PCB's. Nothing was done to preclude the addition of simulators later on, but by admitting that we were creating a schematic capture



tool as a front-end for PCB design, we have allowed ourselves to color outside the lines of tradition and see if maybe there is a better way to do the task at hand.

Until now, PCB123 shipped a schematic capture application that was a third-party OEM product not directly developed or maintained by Sunstone. With every new release of PCB123, the schematic application fell behind in capabilities compared to the layout software. It also became a proportionally larger source of customer support issues. Serious consideration was given to just scrapping the schematic product, directing customers to freeware schematic applications and merely writing netlist importers for the layout software. The problem with that was our usage statistics did not support abandoning a schematic point tool – not everyone used PCB123 Schematic, but enough people did that we couldn't just drop the functionality. The clincher was this: we could find no free schematic program that we were comfortable recommending.

And so it was decided that a new schematic program should be created in-house and that we should aim it at being highly PCB-centric and, keeping with the model, should take advantage wherever it could to increase throughput for customers.

We like win-win situations and it seemed to make sense that we create the schematic application right inside the PCB123 application. We would be able to leverage the existing software framework and users would not have to be flipping between applications.

This led to some deep questions about the traditional interface between a schematic and a PCB. With the two applications residing in the same framework, using a netlist for transferring data seemed to be a contrived solution. Why not have the PCB and schematic synchronized at all times? If both applications were tightly integrated, they could share so much more than a netlist.

For it to work, a couple of rules had to be established. They are simple, require no extra steps by you, the customer, and are largely automatic.

The Design-by-contract solution

Design-by-contract, as applied by PCB123, simply outlines a set of requirements that must be met before some operation can be completed. For instance, one requirement for placing a symbol on a schematic page is that the symbol must identify the PCB footprint that it uses. Otherwise, the PCB would not be able to synchronize with the schematic without complaining. Why allow a symbol that is missing critical data to be used? Why not provide the means for supplying the data either automatically or though low-pain facilities in the program?

Binding a footprint to a schematic symbol should perform the necessary checking to ensure the symbol pin numbers match the PCB footprint pin numbers.

Another rule for placing a symbol is that it must have a design-wide unique reference designator (component name). That rule is a perfect candidate for automating.

Notice above we only mention restricting the *placement* of a symbol instance with an incomplete or invalid symbol, we say nothing about the creation of one! So why allow a symbol to be created unless it fulfills a requirements contract? The answer to that is simple: some schematic symbols, such as a resistor, live up to their names and are completely symbolic. The same resistor symbol can be shared by



many thousands of different parts that physically have various shapes and sizes. It would be ridiculous to have to create the same schematic resistor symbol for every different size resistor. Conversely, there are common chip packages that are shared by thousands of different chips, but each one may require a unique schematic symbol. An elegant solution to these problems was worked out so that the fulfillment of the symbol contract requirements happens even while providing the flexibility for symbol reuse. This will be covered in detail under <u>Symbols and Parts</u>.

All this talk of contracts and requirements may sound restrictive, but that is not the case. Most contract requirements, such as the unique reference designator requirement mentioned above, are automatically fulfilled by the software. The only time a requirement might bubble up as an action for the user are a couple of situations where the user would have to eventually resolve the problem anyway.

So far, we have only been talking about changes in the schematic initiating changes to the layout but the reverse must be accommodated too. Changes must be allowed to happen from both the schematic and the layout tool and synchronization should be bidirectional. It is reasonable to expect a component such as a decoupling capacitor to be added from within the layout tool. This operation requires that a schematic symbol representing the PCB component be added to the schematic in order for the two sides to match. The problem is, which symbol should it use? To expect that a PCB footprint would contain a reference to a schematic symbol for it to use does not even make sense. To accommodate this, a couple of services had to be created in the software.

The first service is a generic-symbol generator. At a minimum, it creates a rectangular symbol with a reference designator and one symbol pin for every package pin found in the footprint.

The other service needed by the software is the generation of special schematic pages called Sync pages. Parts added from Layout are automatically placed on sync pages. These are just like normal pages except they maintain internal bookkeeping for where to place the next auto-generated part. In addition to parts, unattached (board-level) pins that may have been added to a net to provide test points will be added to sync pages to maintain a one-to-one node relationship in the net graphs. Connections between pins (edges in the graphs) are not mapped, nor need to be mapped between the PCB and the schematic but the nodes (pins) do. The main reason Sync pages are differentiated from regular pages is they are considered under system control. You should not manually add parts on these pages. Nothing dangerous should happen, it's just that any part you add may no be seen and a future auto-generated part may be placed on top of your part.

OUT3- OUT4- OUT5- GROUND-	10 9 8 7 6		11 OUT2 12 OUT1 13 OUT0 14 VCC
DEF107_1 DEF101_1 DEF95_1 DEF89_1 DEF83_1 DEF77_1	5 4 3 2 1	U118	15 16 17 18 19 20

If a new connection is added to a pin in the PCB, then a Global port is added and attached to the pin in the schematic. This will happen on whatever page the pin is on, and is not limited to a sync page. Global ports are identical in operation to power and ground port symbols in that they expose a net name for global use. A picture of an automatically-generated symbol wired with global ports is shown to the left.

Besides detecting when new objects are added to the design, the software must also accommodate object deletions and modifications. Deletions are very straightforward, as nothing has to be synthesized



or de-referenced. There is not necessarily a one-to-one correspondence between deleted objects from both sides. Deleting a component from Layout may result in several gates being deleted from the schematic. Conversely, deleting a gate from the schematic may not delete a component in the PCB if there are other gates from the same part still in use. The pins used by that gate will certainly be disconnected from any nets in the PCB.

There is a use case that you may have noticed and are worried about: If you want to perform a simple cosmetic operation such as cutting a circuit from one page and pasting it into another page in the schematic then this operation as describe above would do catastrophic damage to the existing PCB layout. The moment the circuit was cut from the original page, all the components and routing in that circuit would be removed from the PCB. Then, when you added it back in to the destination page all those parts and their connections would be added to the PCB at the system origin. Fortunately, PCB123 deals with this situation just fine. The only restriction is that the operation must be performed during a single session in the software. You cannot cut, then exit the software, or even close the design and expect it to paste successfully in a later session.

Special note: Some object modifications are not directly allowed. Luckily, these are rarely required. One example is you cannot simply change the footprint reference in an already-placed schematic symbol and expect a new footprint to be swapped into use for the corresponding PCB component. To perform this operation, you are forced to delete the old symbol and add it back in with a symbol that specifies the new footprint reference. This ensures that the contract requirements are satisfied in a standard order. We expect these limitations will be removed in the near future.

Properties

A property is a named piece of data. It is the most primitive type of object in the system and every type of schematic object in PCB123 can act as a container for an arbitrary amount of data in the form of properties. A property is either a user-defined property or a system-defined property. There is no difference between the two types of properties other than system-defined properties will be actively interpreted by the software.

The only restriction placed on a property name is that it must begin with a letter or underscore `_', but property names that begin with an underscore are reserved for system-defined properties and should not be used for user-defined properties. Property names will always be converted to upper case.

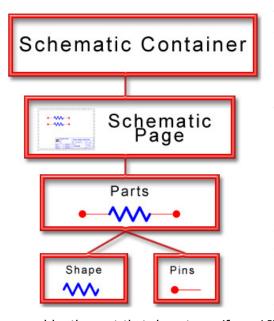
The value of a property is arbitrary. It may represent a color, a size, a picture, or anything else as long as it can be stored as a string of characters either directly or by some conversion. The character string can be any length except zero. Setting a property to empty has the effect of removing that property from the object that it is attached to.

Schematic objects have specific fields that are intrinsic to the object such as a location or rotation field in a text object. These fields are present in every instance of a text object. Objects may be specified with additional fields that are not intrinsic – they are essentially optional fields. It would be wasteful to store



the font name and font size inside every text object that is displayed. It would be bothersome to change the font on every piece of text that stored it intrinsically. This is the reason system-defined properties exist. A system-defined property such as _TEXTFONT can be attached to a text object to specifically set the font to use when displaying that piece of text. If the property is not present, then some default is used. Let's look at how that default is chosen.

Properties exhibit 'bubbling' behavior. What this means is that if a property value is requested from an object and that object does not contain the requested property, then it will forward that request 'up' to its parent and so on. Let's look at a simplified diagram of the parent-child relationship of a part placed on a schematic page.



The picture to the right shows that a top-level object called the Schematic Container is the parent of schematic pages, which in turn contain children such as parts. A part can be a container for shapes and pins (among other things).

Attached to the schematic container is a default value for every system property. They act as a sink for property value requests that are not honored by child items. When the system attempts to draw some shape that is owned by a part, such as the resistor shape on the left, then a request for the _LINECOLOR property is made of the shape. If the shape contains a _LINECOLOR property that is set to green, then the search ends and the line will be drawn in green. If the shape didn't have a _LINECOLOR property, the request is forwarded up to the parent of the shape which is a part. If the part had a _LINECOLOR property set to purple, then that becomes the default line color used to draw all shapes

owned by the part that do not specify a _LINECOLOR property. When objects are created, they will use the default values for many of the various system-defined properties by simply not defining the property for the object. This means you can change the value of a single property such as _TEXTFONT in the toplevel schematic object and all text will use that font when being drawn unless specifically overridden in an object.

There are numerous system-defined properties and a full list can be found in the Schematic Reference Guide. Most are accessible through the Properties Dialog by clicking on this 🙆 icon from the various context panes it appears on. In most cases you do not have to deal directly with the property names but rather their descriptions and many have context sensitive controls such as a color popup if the property value is a color.

Some properties are read only. In these cases, they will be displayed in gray and cannot be changed. What use is a read-only property? The answer to that is you can add Text objects that display the value of a property instead of a static text string. That means a text object can be created that displays the value of the _NUMPAGES property even though that property is a system-managed value. This will be covered in detail later on.



Symbols and Parts

This section describes the relationship between symbols, sections, parts, footprints, and components.

Wow! That was a mouthful. Isn't this supposed to be a simpler system? The answer is yes, but allowances have been made to accommodate a high degree of structure, and that in turn can aid efficiency and increase productivity.

Designing an electronic circuit has traditionally been graphical in nature where the electronic components used in the circuit were represented by symbols and their interconnections by lines, or "wires", drawn between the symbols. Today, many circuits are designed in text editors using structured languages such as Verilog, VHDL, and C/C++. But that's if the circuit being designed resides in a chip. Using that chip in a product still entails hooking it up to the rest of the circuit using a graphical schematic.

When drawn on paper, a schematic can play fast and loose with the level of detail required to convey the circuit's intent. Historically, most symbols didn't need specific pin numbers or pin names and many didn't even indicate reference designators -- only a value or a part number.

An electronic version of a schematic is a different story. The reason schematics are drawn using special schematic capture software is to corral a great deal of information for use by other software programs such as digital simulators, SPICE simulators, and PCB design systems. The schematic software also generates BOM (Bill of Materials) reports, various statistical reports, and even performs simple semantic checking on the circuit.

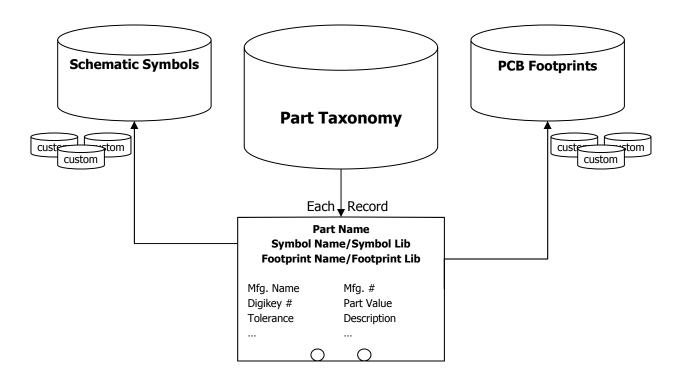
Half the information contained in (defined by?) a schematic is the interconnection between components by drawn wires. These interconnects define their own data by where they are drawn or, more specifically, where they end. They describe the interconnection by conductors (edges) between component pins (nodes). In graph theory, a set of connected nodes is called a network but the ECAD industry has shortened it to just net. So there it is: *half the information in a schematic is the interconnection of components by connecting networks of pins with wires*. If the other half of the information in a schematic were so simple, you would only have one more paragraph to read.

Unlike wires, the other half of the information doesn't describe itself. Luckily, the great majority of the information is contained in the reusable symbols and parts, which are stored in a library. The rest of the information is design-specific and most of that is auto-generated.

So what is the other half of the information? The simple answer is *part data*. A part is more than just a symbol plopped down on a schematic page.

A Part is assembled from various entities that reside in libraries. The relationship between these libraries is as follows:





The part taxonomy is a searchable database of parts organized in a flexible hierarchy. It accommodates the reuse of both schematic symbols and PCB footprints by allowing one library object to participate in many different parts. It is described in detail below.

Schematic symbols are created in the Symbol Editor or the Part Wizard and are saved either into the standard symbol library named std.sym, or into a custom library that you created.

PCB Footprints are created in the Footprint Editor and are saved either into the standard footprint library named Std.slb or into a custom footprint library that you created.

The single best reason for creating custom symbol and footprint libraries is because the standard libraries may get overridden during software updates. Sunstone reserves the right to grow the standard libraries from release to release.

The Parts Data is copied in its entirety from the libraries and into a design. Once an object is loaded into a design, it becomes fully encapsulated and travels with the design file (does not require that the library file be present to work with the design.)

If you wish to copy libraries from one machine to another, then you need to know where they are. The root directory for all library files will be Windows XP: **Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\PCB123\Lib** or Windows 7/8 **Programdata\PCB123\Lib** on the system drive. This directory may be hidden from you but the PCB123 installer should have installed a link named **PCB123 Files** in your **My Documents** folder. The link points to the Windows XP: **Documents and Settings\All Users\Application Data\PCB123\Lib** or Windows 7/8 **Programdata\PCB123\Lib** directory. Clicking on it will browse to that directory. From there, you will see the **Lib** subdirectory. Any custom library that you create will be created in the **Lib\Custom** subdirectory.

Parts

A part is typically an electronic component that is purchased and mounted to a PCB. A part has a *logical manifestation* and a *physical manifestation*. The physical manifestation is a single instance of a PCB footprint that contains the pad geometries and/or drill hole locations for mounting and soldering the part on the PCB. The logical manifestation of a part consists of one or more graphic symbols instantiated on a schematic page or pages. The reason a part may have several schematic symbols is due to some logical or functional partitioning of the part. PCB123 has adopted the term *Section* for each partition but you may also think of them as gates.

A part has a name called a *reference designator* that is unique throughout an entire design. The reference designator consists of an alpha prefix and a numerical value. In addition, each section of a multi-section part will have an alpha suffix that is unique to each section of the part. You have total freedom to specify the alpha prefix but the numerical value and possible suffix are managed by the PCB123 software.

Class	Prefix	Symbol
Battery	В	-1 F
Capacitor	С	Hor H
Diode	D, or CR	+
Fuse	F	~
Connector	J, or P	
Relay	К	
Inductor	L, or FB (Ferrite Bead)	000
Transistor	Q, or VR (Regulator)	₩ Q
Resistor	R, or RN (Network)	-~~-
Switch	S, or SW	<u> </u>
Transformer	Т	000
IC or Chip	U	
Crystal	Y, XTAL, OSC	
Zener Diode	Z, or D, or CR	₩

There are standard prefixes for different part classes such as resistors and capacitors. The table on the left lists the most common part classes along with the prefixes and a typical schematic symbol for that class.

You have the ability to assign a prefix to a symbol. All parts that use that symbol will have that reference designator prefix.

Besides a reference designator, one or more symbols, and a PCB footprint specification, parts may contain other information such as a value, tolerance, manufacturer's part number or distributor number such as a

Digikey catalog number. In reality, a part may hold any information you desire. How this extra information is acquired will be described shortly.

Please refer to the back of this manual for up-to-date information on the naming conventions employed by the Accelerated Designs Ultralib parts available for use in PCB123 V4.

For now, let's move on to the role a symbol plays in a part description.

Symbols

A schematic symbol is a collection of primitive objects such as pins, 2-D shapes, and text that are treated as a single entity and may represent a complete part or one section of a part. Symbols reside in libraries, where they may be referenced by parts.



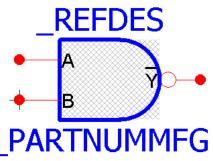
Some symbols, such as resistors and capacitors, are highly generic and a single symbol may be suitable to represent thousands of different parts. Other symbols, such as an MCU, may be created that are unique to just one part. There are even some symbols that are never intended to represent a part at all but only sections of a part, such as a NAND gate.

There are no hard rules, but in general the more specific a symbol is to a particular device, the more information you want to bind to it. Conversely, a symbol that will be used for a large assortment of parts will want to stay reasonably generic in the information it specifies.

Symbols can be drawn by hand using the Symbol Editor or they can be created automatically with the Part Wizard. Symbols created automatically with the Part Wizard are limited to a rectangular symbol with pins that can be described in spreadsheet fashion.

Symbol text

•



Symbols may contain both static and dynamic text objects. Intrinsic to a text object is a string to display. How that string is interpreted depends on the text type. If it is static text, then the string is displayed verbatim and does not change unless a new string is supplied. Dynamic text will interpret the string as the name of a property (system-defined or user-defined) and display the bubbled value for the property name. The symbol on the left is a highly-generic symbol that has two dynamic strings. When this symbol is incorporated into a part and that part is placed on

a page, then the _REFDES will be replaced with the actual reference designator for the part and _PARTNUMMFG will be replaced with the manufacturer's part number if supplied to the part.

Other intrinsic text fields besides the string include:

- **Text Location** The X,Y coordinate for the text origin. The Y origin is always at the top of the character cell but the X origin depends on the text alignment described below.
 - **Text Rotation** Either 0 degrees (horizontal text) or 90 degrees for vertical text.
- **Text Alignment** Specifies either Left, Center, or Right aligned text. The X origin for the text will coincide with the left edge, center, or right edge of the text respectively.

The following system-defined properties may be used to affect the display of text objects:

- **_TEXTFONT** Specifies the font name to use when drawing the text.
- **_TEXTSIZE** Specifies the text height in points. There are 72 points in one inch.
- **_TEXTCOLOR** Specifies the color of the text. This is usually set with a color picker but in the event you gain textual access to this property, you can encode the Red, Green, and Blue values using the following formula: color = (Red*65536)+(Green*256)+Blue, where each color may range between 0 and 255. Additionally, you may set a color to invisible by setting it to (or adding) 2,147,483,648.

51 •



Symbol shapes

You can add lines, arcs, and regions to symbols. Virtually every display characteristic for shapes are controlled by attaching system-defined properties to the shape or, to specify them all at once, attaching the property to the symbol. The system-defined properties that affect the display of shapes are:

_LINEWIDTH – Specifies the width of the line. This is typically selected from a choice but numerically it is in 100ths of an inch (10 1/100ths of an inch = .1 inches)

_LINECOLOR - Specifies the color of the line or outline.

_LINESTYLE - 0 = solid, 1 = dashed, 2 = dotted, 3 = dot-dashed.

_FILLCOLOR1 - Color to fill the interior of closed regions.

_FILLSTYLE -0 = hollow, 1 = solid, 2 = horizontal hatched, 3 = diagonal hatched, 4 = cross hatched, 5 = diamond hatched.

Symbol pins

Probably the most important primitive that is included in a symbol is a pin. Pins map a logical port on the symbol to a physical pin in the footprint. Pins have a hotspot (designated by a small, solid circle) that provides a tie point for wires.

Graphically, A symbol contains an inside and an outside. The smallest the inside can be is the rectangle that bounds all drawn shapes in the symbol. Pins will be constrained to the edge of this rectangle and will always face outward. This provides uniform alignment of the pins and ensures the automatic wire router has a clean escape from the pins without bumping into shapes.

Intrinsic to pins are:

- Internal pin name A label for the pin. A pin name must be supplied for a pin. It is recommended that the names be unique within the symbol but it is not required. This relaxed rule is to accommodate multiple names such as GND or VCC in a symbol or part. If a pin name ends with 2 hyphens, or minus signs ('--'), then the hyphens will not be displayed, but rather a bar will be drawn over the pin name. This is a visual indicator for "NOT", or inverted.
- **External pin number** The pin number of the footprint this pin represents. When creating a generic symbol that may be used by different footprints, it is not necessary to define a pin number, as shown in the symbol above. Generic symbols are expected to be assembled into a part using the Part Wizard. By the time a symbol is used in a part, it must have acquired a unique pin number for every pin and the pin number must match a pin in the footprint. The double-hyphen mnemonic does not apply to pin numbers because they have to match up with the name of a footprint pin. They are called pin numbers but may in fact contain other characters than digits.
- **Pin shape** There are several graphical styles that pin can assume. They are:

Zero Pin

Zero-length pin. Not typically used.





VCC

0

0

0

0

0

Normal Pin Dot Pin Clock Pin Dot-Clock Pin No special meaning attributed to pin. Signifies and inverted state. Indicates pin is used to clock the device. Inverted clock.

- **Pin Type** Classifies the pin's function. Assigning a pin type to a pin allows that pin to participate in certain rules checking such as the Electrical Rules Check. This check will catch wiring combinations that are suspect such as a GND pin tied to a VCC pin. Possible values are:
 - N/C Pin is never connected.
 - Pin is tied to voltage source.
 - **GND** Pin is tied to ground.
 - **PASSIVE** Default pin type.
 - **INPUT** Pin is an input to an active device.
 - **OUTPUT** Pin is an output from an active device.
 - **BIDIRECTIONAL** Active input or output pin.
 - **TRISTATE** Pin may assume high impedance state.
 - ECL Emitter-coupled logic.

Pins will always snap to an immutable pin grid. This, coupled with a symbol rotation restriction of 90degree increments ensures that pins will always stay on a neat grid.

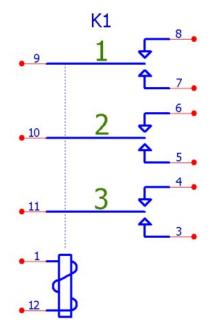
The only active system-defined properties for pins are _PINNAMEVIS and _PINNUMVIS. When these properties are set to zero, the pin name and pin number respectively will not be displayed.

In the future, pins may contain properties that both drive and probe a simulator.

Symbol properties

Recall that in the discussion of symbol text we used as an example a system-defined property named _PARTNUMMFG. In that discussion we showed how a dynamic text whose string value was set to _PARTNUMMFG would display the manufacturers part number if it found one. So where would it find this value? If we wanted, we could add a property called _PARTNUMMFG to the symbol itself and set its value to SN74AHCT00N just as an example. When it was time to display the text object, it would bubble up a request for the value of a property named _PARTNUMMFG and would get back SN74AHCT00N almost right away. The fastest if could get back an answer would be if it contained the named property itself. Because the text object didn't possess that particular property, it forwarded the request up to its parent, which is the symbol itself. In this example symbol (the NAND gate pictured above) it wouldn't make much sense to bind such explicit information to the symbol. After all, we want to use that symbol wherever we can to avoid duplicating effort. So the symbol is not a good place to store device-specific properties if the symbol is intended for reuse. That doesn't mean it can't contain other useful properties.

One such property is the reference designator prefix, which in this case would always be 'U'. Now you wouldn't have to specify it using a property because there is a dedicated place to fill in that information but behind the scenes, the symbol editor is actually binding the reference designator prefix to the symbol in the form of a property. Even on a symbol that just represents a gate and not a part, this property will find a home because when a part object is assembled from one or more symbols, the part will suck up any properties that were specified by the symbol.



In fact, if we specified just one more property we could automatically create a part object that could be placed on a schematic page. Take a look at the symbol on the left. It is a single-sourced relay that is available in only one package size.

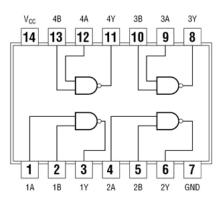
Because this is most likely a one-off symbol, it makes sense to specify device-specific properties right in the symbol. There are a pair of system-defined properties named _PARTFOOTPRINT and _PARTFOOTPRINTLIB. By specifying these properties right in the symbol, PCB123 will have all the information it needs to instantiate the symbol directly on a schematic page.

In fact, this is not what happens. PCB123 actually creates a part object and assembles all the necessary information automatically. Again, you do not have to specify the properties directly because the symbol editor has a very handy graphical footprint browser and search tool. You can just click on a footprint to use and it will automatically create and bind the footprint properties. In addition,

when you save the symbol to a library, it will perform full validation on the pin number mappings and only save the symbol if it completes the contract terms. It will also add an entry into the part taxonomy so the symbol can be searched in the normal way. It adds an entry under the "Generic Symbols" family of the "Other" part class in the taxonomy. You can move it to a more orderly place if you desire.

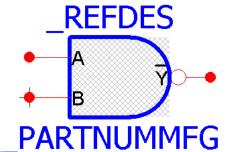
So, we have seen how we can quickly flash up some pins and shapes in the symbol editor and then graphically browse for the footprint the symbol will use. After saving the symbol there will now be a part in the taxonomy that is immediately available for use.

We should back up just a minute and address the other scenario that we glossed over and that is how



best to create generic symbols and then use them in parts with partspecific properties.

The picture to the left shows a pin assignment diagram for a Texas Instruments 7400 Quad NAND Gate. There is an inner rectangle showing the 4 NAND gates inside the chip and the small outer rectangles represent the physical pins on the part. The bold numbers are the pin numbers of the package and the small labels are the internal pin names. In this case, there is a pattern where the two inputs of each gate are named A and B, and the output is named Y.



Let's look again at our NAND gate. This symbol seems to have all the things we need if we want to place the NAND gates individually. It has the 3 pins and their names are labeled correctly. It has placeholders for values we want to see on the schematic page. So, let's just see what part numbers this gate can be used in. We know it can be used in a 7400 part but that's just a generic name for the part. We would have a difficult time



ordering a part number 7400 from Texas Instruments. Here is just a sampling of the actual 7400 devices from various logic families.

SN7400N, SN74S00N, SN74LS00N, SN74HC00N, SN74HC00E, SN74HCT00N, SN74HCT00E, SN74AS00N, SN74ALS00AN, SN74AHC00N, SN74AHCT00N, SN74AC00N...

There are similar series for the 7401, 7403, 7424, 7426, 37, 38,.... 74804, 748003, all using the NAND gate and that's just from Texas Instruments. Many of the parts where we would like to use the NAND symbol have widely varying configurations. Many have the same pin assignments but use different packages such as through-hole or surface mount packages, and still other parts have different pin configurations or even differ in the number of gates in a part.

With a little bit of organizing, we will be able to reuse the NAND symbol in hundreds of parts and decorate the parts with a rich information model.

The first step is to review the candidates and organize them by the number of gates in a part and the pin assignments for each gate in the part. A quick check of the TI data book shows that in addition to the 7400, the 7403, 7426, 7437, and 7438 series devices all share the same configuration.

Now that we have identified the gate and pin assignments that are needed, you will use the Symbol Editor, go to Tools > Symbol Editor.

You will use the tool bar across the top of the symbol editor to create and edit your symbol.

New Symbol – Use this to start a new symbol.

Open Symbol – Use this to load and existing symbol for editing in section A.



Save – Save your symbol



Cut – Cut the selected object



Copy – Copy the selected object

Paste – Paste the selected object



Undo - Last operation



Redo – Last operation

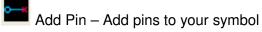


New Section – Add an additional section to your symbol

R Delete Section - Remove currently selected section of you symbol. Never delete section A.



Select Object – Allows you select any object in your symbol



Add Line – Add a line to your symbol



Add Rectangle – Draw Rectangles

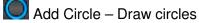
Add Polyline – Draw polylines



Add Polygon – Draw polygons



Add Arc – Draw Arcs



Add Text – Insert Text



Add Image – Insert Image

Description of Zoom Toolbar

🔍 Zoom In

Zoom Out

Zoom All

Refresh

Actual Size





Select the Open Symbol button on the tool bar to load an existing symbol. If you do not want to use an existing symbol, you can begin drawing your symbol here. You will draw the body of your symbol in the shaded area provided using the polygon tools. Place you mouse near the edge or at a corner of the shaded area left click and hold, then move your mouse to change the size of the shaded area. The area will always be rectangular and the pins of your symbol will lie along the perimeter of this shape. You can use the Add Pin tool to add each terminal.

nbol Panel			
General		Symbol	
ymbol name	Properties		
NEW SYMBOL			
eference designator prefix	U		
ection		*	
	1		
×	Properties		
Add New Add Existing	Remove		
		REFDES	
Symbol Mins			

Search for the symbol you would like to start with in Step 1. Select the symbol in Step 2 and then select Load Symbol in Step 3.



Load Symbol	
Step 1: Search * and ? are wild Begins with Contains	Preview Symbol
Active library	_REFDES
Step 2: Select	
NAND_ZINPUT_SYMBOL NAND_ZINPUT_SYMBOL NAND_BINPUT_SYMBOL	2_B
NAND_4INPUT_SYMBOL QUAD_NAND QUAD_NAND2	ARTNUMMFC
TRIPPLE_3-INPUT_NAND DUAL_4-INPUT_NAND 8-INPUT_NAND	
NAND_4INPUT_SYMBOL NAND_8INPUT_SYMBOL NAND_13INPUT_SYMBOL	Library std.sym Symbol
	NAND_2INPUT_SYMBOL Footprint
Step 3: Insert Help	Description
Load Symbol Cancel	

If you would like to load an existing symbol to an additional section, use the Add Existing button. You can create a new blank section by selecting the Add New button. Use the Remove button to delete the selected section.

	Symbol Editor [NAND_2INPUT_SYMBOL]		- 🗆 🛛
9	ymbol Panel		۲
	General		۹.
	Symbol name Properties	· · · · ·	
	NAND_2INPUT_SYMBOL		1:1
	Reference designator prefix		G
	Section		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Properties	REFDES A MARKED REFDES A MARKED	a (6
	Add New Add Existing Remove		a
		▲ · · · · · · • • • • ▲ A	a
		Y <mark>O² •</mark> • •	a - 2
		● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ● ●	8 . P
			a
		PARTNUMMFG • •	a
			a
			9 P
			s
-	D Symbol Pins		>
		For Help, press F1 0.7in 0.8in	

Once a new section is added, you see a tab labeled B and the pin numbers are updated. You can toggle between the tabs to edit each section.



nbol Panel	🖌 🖓 🖓 🕸 🕵 📉 🛄 🖬 🖬 🔤	
General		
ymbol name Properties		
NAND_2INPUT_SYMBOL		
eference designator prefix		
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·		
Section	DEEDEC	
B Properties	_REFDES	
Add New Add Existing Remove	4	
	• TA	
	<u>5</u> B	
	DADTAULAAAEO	
	PARTNUMMFG	
	101	>

Add section C by selecting Add Existing as described previously. You could also select Add New to create a blank section. Then copy the contents of section B in to the newly created section C. When you copy and paste into the new section you may need to adjust the shaded area to fit correctly around the symbol.

In section C, the copied pins are labeled seven, eight, and nine. In the 7400 pins, 7 and 14 are hidden so you must edit the pin numbers. Select the pins tab to edit the pin numbers.

Symbol Editor [NAND_2INPUT_SYMBOL - Section: C]		
Symbol Panel General General		
Symbol name Properties NAND_ZINPUT_SYMBOL	Ÿ	
Reference designator prefix		G
Section		*
Add New Add Existing Remove	REFDES 	
Symbel Pirs	s Contraction Statements Statem Statements Statements Statem Statements Statements Statem Statements Statements Statements Statements Statement	

Change the pin number for section C to eight, nine, and ten. Start by changing pin nine since duplicate pin numbers are not allowed.



		Pin De	finitions					
		Pin				γĿ	-	
Section	Name	Number	Туре		Shape			
• •	A	1	INPUT	-	Normal	-		
-	в	2	INPUT	-	Normal	-		
-	Y	3	OUTPUT	-	Dot	-		
•	A	4	INPUT	-	Normal	-		
•	в	5	INPUT	•	Normal	-		REFDES
•	γ	6	OUTPUT	-	Dot	•		
•	A	8	INPUT	-	Normal	-		8 4
•	В	9	INPUT	-	Normal	-		
•	Y	10	OUTPUT	-	Dot	-		<u>9</u> B
-				-		-		₩ ₩
-				-		-		PARTNUMMFG
-				-		-		
-				•		-		
-				-		-		
+				-		-		
-				-		•		
-				-		-		
-				-		•	-	

Switch back to the Symbol tab and add Section D as described previously. Once you have all four sections of this symbol in place select, the pins tab to edit the pin properties and add the hidden pins.

	Symbol Editor [NAND_2INPUT_SYMBOL - Section: D]		
-	iymbol Panel		•
	General		۹.
	Symbol name Properties	7	
	NAND_2INPUT_SYMBOL		1:1
	Beference designator prefix		G ⊯≊
	Section		×2
	D Properties	REFDES	
	Add New Add Existing Remove	•11 A	
		<u>↓12</u> B	
		PARTNUMMFG	
		_	
			>
	Symbol Pins	For Help, press F1 -0.1in 0.9	

On the pins tab modify the pin properties as shown below.



bol Pa			Pin Del	initions	_				P
			THE O					A B C D	
			Pin				√ ▲		
Sectio	on	Name	Number	Туре		Shape			
۹.	• A		1	INPUT	•	Normal	-		
۹.	▼ B		2	INPUT	•	Normal	•		
4	▼ Y		3	OUTPUT	•	Dot	•	REFDES	
3	▼ A		4	INPUT	-	Normal	-	KEEDES	
3	▼ B		5	INPUT	-	Normal	-		
З	▼ Y		6	OUTPUT	-	Dot	•		
c	• A		8	INPUT	-	Normal	•		
c	• B		9	INPUT	-	Normal	•	A 10	
c	▼ Y		10	OUTPUT	-	Dot	-		
C	▼ A		11	INPUT	-	Normal	•		
C	▼ B		12	INPUT	-	Normal	•		
)	• Y		13	OUTPUT	-	Dot	•		
	•				-		•		
	•				-		•		
	-				-		•	PARTNUMMFG	
	-				-		•		
	•				-		•		
	•				-		•	*	
	•				-		•		
	•				-		-		
	-				-		•		
	•				-		•		
	•				-		•		
	•				-		•		
	-				-		•		
	•				-		•		
	•				-		•		
Symbo	F F				_			<	

You will add pin 7 by clicking in the first empty Number field and type a 7. Select the shape Hidden P/G type GND and change the Name. Repeat for pin 14.

Panel							🗋 📂 🔚 🐁 🖆 🖆 💋 😢 🕸 😣 🔼 🔤 💾 💽 🔳 🔜
		Pin De	finitions				A B C D
		Pin			∇		
ction	Name	Number	Туре		Shape		
-	Y	13	OUTPUT	-	Dot 🔹		
-	В	12	INPUT	-	Normal -		
-	A	11	INPUT	-	Normal 🗸		
-	Y	10	OUTPUT	-	Dot 🔹		REFDES
•	В	9	INPUT	-	Normal 🗸		
-	A	8	INPUT	-	Normal 🗸		
-	Y	6	OUTPUT	-	Dot 🔹		
-	В	5	INPUT	-	Normal 👻		
-	A	4	INPUT	-	Normal 👻		
-	Y	3	OUTPUT	-	Dot 🔹		
•	В	2	INPUT	-	Normal 👻		
-	A	1	INPUT	-	Normal 🔹		
Ŧ	14	14	VCC	-	Hidden P/G 👻		
Ŧ	7	7	GND	-	Hidden P/G 👻		
-				-	•		PARTNUMMFG
-				-	•		
-				-	•		
-				-	-		
-				-	-		
-				-	-		+
-				-	•		
•				-	•		
-				-	•		
-				•	-		
-				-	-		
•				-	•		
-				-	•	•	
nbol 🖥							<



You can change the Section, Name, Number, Type and Shape of each pin. Use the drop down menu for Section, Type and Shape. Double click in the Name and Number fields to edit. As you make changes to a pin, you can see the changes in the preview window. As changes are made on the pins tab, you can move pins as needed in the preview window.

After updating the information on the Pin Definitions tab, review each section and use the Save icon to save the symbol. Please save custom symbols to a new library. The libraries included with the PCB123 download cannot be used to save your custom parts.

We save the part into our library using the generic name QUAD_NAND and select OK.

Remember, all we have done to this point is create a template to be used by a large number of different parts. Nowhere in this exercise did we specify an orderable part number, nor did we bind the template to any physical footprint.

Binding templates to create library parts is accomplished using another toolset inside PCB123 and will be discussed in the next section, The Part Taxonomy.

Pre-Defined Parts

With the introduction of PCB123 V4, Sunstone Circuits is proud to include an extensive library of 750,000+ commonly used parts and connectors. These parts definitions are sourced from Accelerated Designs Inc., in Huntsville Alabama, and are drawn from the Accelerated Designs Ultralib product. These parts are fully defined and available for use by PCB123 users. Parts definitions include:

- Schematic Symbols (multi-part where applicable)
- Footprint
- Reference Designator
- Parametric data including:
 - \circ Values
 - Manufacturer Name
 - Manufacturer Part Number
 - DigiKey Part Number
 - Hyperlinked part data sheet
 - Hyperlink to the Digi-Key product summary page

As we've already mentioned in this section, a 750,000 parts library would require huge amounts of storage and create unworkable download times. Furthermore, the average PCB designer uses about 20,000 parts in their personal library. Trouble is, not every engineer uses the same 20,000 parts. To this



end, PCB123 makes the entire catalog available as an online web service. Users search for parts by the functional parameters, and select them from the search results. If the part is not currently local to the user's taxonomy, PCB123 can download the ADI Ultralib family in which that part is defined. In this way, users dynamically fill out their taxonomy based on the parts they regularly use, *and* avoid making room for the 730,000 or so parts they'll never use.

PCB123 and Accelerated Designs do not expect that we've defined every part you will need. It is our expectation, however, that these library parts will greatly reduce the amount of time spent by users in defining parts. Furthermore, with standardized parts available, users can have the peace of mind that they are referencing known-good parts definitions.

Finally, the Accelerated Design parts all contain appropriate manufacturer and Digi-Key part numbers (wherever possible). These part numbers enable LiveBOM queries inside the Bill of Materials tab. So not only do you have access to a fully defined schematic and footprint symbol but, thanks to LiveBOM, you can also check for availability, pricing and second source information via the Digi-Key website.

For more information about the structure, organization and naming conventions employed by the Ultralib parts, please refer to the back of this manual.

The Part Taxonomy

Sunstone examined various schematic capture programs during the development of the new schematics facility in PCB123. We looked not so much at the features of these systems, but how they managed design processes. One thing that stood out was how dissimilar the various systems were in how they dealt with libraries and managed parts. Surprisingly, the places where they did agree we didn't necessarily think were the best solutions to the problem. Sunstone walked away from the evaluations more with a list of what *not* to do than of features to emulate. This is not a knock on those systems. After all, they paved the way to make the comparisons possible.

Searching for a part was another issue. Most of the systems we evaluated based their search criteria on the name of a part. Systems that provided capabilities beyond that typically did so by drilling down through additional dialog boxes that offered up different search criteria. None of the systems we evaluated allowed an arbitrary search term, such as a resistor value, to be entered in a general search that successfully found a part. We were of the opinion that the name of a part was almost irrelevant unless maybe it was a manufacturer's part number or something that was universally known. With some parts, it does not even make sense that you would key off the name when selecting it. For instance, if you need a resistor then you should be able to type **4.99k**, **1%** and get a list of parts that included those criteria. You could guide the search more specifically by entering **4.99k**, **1%**, **1/8W**, **Rohm**, or by entering a specific manufacturer's part number.

Something that is always fun to play when developing a new product is the "wouldn't it be neat if..." game, such as "wouldn't it be neat if we included an entire catalog of parts, such as the DigiKey catalog, with the system?" Well yes, it would, and if we could create 1000 parts a day, and there were approximately 750,000 parts in the catalog, then it would take 750 days to complete. This clearly precludes the creation of a catalog library from the initial release. Even so, we must be sure the system is capable of handling such a large library for future releases that just might contain such a catalog. A library containing half a million or a million parts would be massive. Each part would include not only a catalog number and manufacturer's information, but also any number of properties that could be useful as searchable criteria or as parameters for tools such as simulators.

Another problem with such a large library is creating it! We went to great pains to describe how the symbol editor and the part wizard may be used to create generic symbols and part templates. If the symbol library only contained a single resistor symbol, and the footprint library only contained a handful of resistor footprints such as the standard 0402, 0603, 0805, and 1206... sizes, we could still create parts for about 20,000 manufacturer or catalog parts numbers. Each part would proclaim, "I am such and such part. I am manufactured by company X as part number Y, and I can be purchased from this catalog as catalog number Z. I use this schematic symbol and this PCB footprint. Some of my important characteristics are...."

Mfg.	Mfg. #	Cat. #	Symbol	Footprint	Value	Tol.	Power	V Max
Rohm	MCR10EZHF17.8K	RHM17.8KCCT-ND	RESISTOR	RC0805L	17.8K	1%	1/8W	150V
Rohm	MCR10EZHF18.0K	RHM18.0KCCT-ND	RESISTOR	RC0805L	18.0K	1%	1/8W	150V
Rohm	MCR10EZHF18.2K	RHM18.2KCCT-ND	RESISTOR	RC0805L	18.2K	1%	1/8W	150V
Rohm	MCR10EZHF18.7K	RHM18.7KCCT-ND	RESISTOR	RC0805L	18.7K	18	1/8W	150V
Rohm	MCR10EZHF19.1K	RHM19.1KCCT-ND	RESISTOR	RC0805L	19.1K	1%	1/8W	150V
Rohm	MCR10EZHF19.6K	RHM19.6KCCT-ND	RESISTOR	RC0805L	19.6K	18	1/8W	150V

Something like that could almost be done in a spreadsheet, as shown below:



Rohm	MCR10EZHF20.0K	RHM20.0KCCT-ND	RESISTOR	RC0805L	20.0K	1%	1/8W	150V
Rohm	MCR10EZHF20.5K	RHM20.5KCCT-ND	RESISTOR	RC0805L	20.5K	1%	1/8W	150V

That would be great because spreadsheets lend themselves beautifully to automation or tabular processing. The only problem is that some of the columns shown in the table above will not work for any part types other than a resistor, and even then, it might be missing columns that are important to you such as temperature stability or RoHS compliance.

There is something interesting to observe with this table; each row defines a part but nowhere does it specify a name for the part. What is its name? The answer is, who cares? If each row specifies all the necessary information for a part, including how to purchase one, then we don't care what it is called, as long as we can find it in a search. That is what we mean by part names being contrived entities and why we did not want to rely on them for searches.

You could point PCB123 to any one row and it could assemble a part for placement on a schematic page. In fact, every column in the table could be removed except the Symbol and Footprint columns and PCB123 could assemble a part for placement. With all the other columns, PCB123 creates a property that uses the column name for the property name and the cell value for the property value.

This is where the payoff happens by keeping symbol definitions generic if there is any hint that they can be reused. A search for a part can be performed using any criteria and all the matches (read choices) will be presented to you. You can then select your choice and the software will bring in the referenced schematic symbol and the referenced footprint, perform all the necessary validation, and if everything is fine, it can then create a part instance, give it a reference designator, and add all the other columns of data to the part in the form of properties. Later, when you want to generate a bill of materials, it may include such items as a catalog number and quantity for each part type which you can then send to the part distributor. Even better, it puts PCB123 on the cusp of automating the purchase of your PC boards, the part kits, and even assembly services just by pressing the Order button. It's too bad we didn't have a Sell Product button too!

Getting back to the table shown above, careful observation shows that only three out of the nine columns have varying data. That is a lot of redundant data. In addition, we still have not addressed the fact that the table is only good for specifying resistors, and that is not even indicated anywhere. Luckily, there is a neat way to solve both problems.

Hierarchy and Inheritance

We call our part database the taxonomy because it separates parts by species and subspecies, with part definitions being progressively refined with each subspecies level. For our purposes, taxonomy is just another word for hierarchy. In fact, we don't use taxonomy terms such as species, order, phylum, or genus, we simply use part class and family.

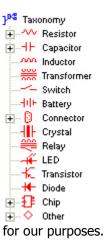
A part class is the first level of the taxonomy. The number of part classes and the name of each class are fixed by the system – they are the only absolutes in the taxonomy structure.



Part classes may contain any number of uniquely named child items called Families. A family is an organizational unit to which properties can be attached. They too may contain any number of uniquely named child families and they may also contain parts.

A Part, in the taxonomy, is just a collection of properties. They are the leaves in the hierarchical tree structure of the taxonomy and may contain no children.

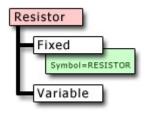
Besides the list of properties that a part may explicitly define, it also inherits all properties that its parent family and any ancestor thereof may define. This is how the redundant data from the table above is removed. In fact, this data "folding" is a natural way to define a hierarchy for a part. To do this, we set two goals: the first is that all parts in a family have the same number of properties (columns). The second is there should be no column whose every value is the same. If we find a column with invariant data, then it should become a property of the parent and the column removed by deleting the property from all the child instances. As an example, we will convert the table above to a hierarchy using these two goals.



If we were starting from scratch, all we would have is the fixed part classes as shown on the left. We know the table represents resistors so the Resistor part class is where we will start defining or discovering the hierarchy for the table.

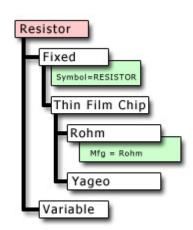
First, we check if there are any invariant columns to eliminate by adding a property to the parent, in this case the Resistor part class. The closest candidate would be the Symbol column with its value RESISTOR but that might asking too much of the **Resistor** part class because there are other resistor symbols such as a variable resistor. This indicates the need for a subspecies to differentiate between at least fixed resistors and variable resistors. We will create two families called **Fixed** and **Variable**, but we will only be concerned with the **Fixed** family

To the **Fixed** family, we will assign a property named Symbol the value RESISTOR, as show to the right. This will assign the RESISTOR symbol to any child family and part under the **Resistor\Fixed** family and we can remove the Symbol column from the table.



With our active node being the **Fixed** family, we again look at the table and

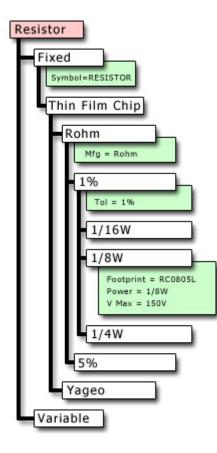
determine there are no more invariant columns that we can safely eliminate by adding additional properties to the **Fixed** node. A good check for this is by asking the question "are all...?", as in "are all fixed resistors made by Rohm?", or "are all fixed resistors 1/8W?" If the answer is no, then the column must be eliminated with further refinement.



Families do not have to be limited to just the invariant columns in the table. In fact, we will add another family named **Thick Film Chip** under the **Fixed** family, but we will not add any properties to it that we know of yet.

The only way we can eliminate another invariant column is to further refine the hierarchy with another family. This is a subjective process, but in this case, it seems to make sense to refine by manufacturer, so we will create a family named **Rohm** and assign to it a property named Mfg who value is also Rohm. This is shown at left.

We can then eliminate the Mfg column from the table and proceed in the same fashion for the additional invariant columns.



The image below shows what the family hierarchy looks like after all invariant columns have been eliminated. The table now contains only 3 columns, all of which have variable data.

M.C	G	
Mfg. #	Cat. #	Value
MCR10EZHF17.8K	RHM17.8KCCT-ND	17.8K
MCR10EZHF18.0K	RHM18.0KCCT-ND	18.0K
MCR10EZHF18.2K	RHM18.2KCCT-ND	18.2K
MCR10EZHF18.7K	RHM18.7KCCT-ND	18.7K
MCR10EZHF19.1K	RHM19.1KCCT-ND	19.1K
MCR10EZHF19.6K	RHM19.6KCCT-ND	19.6K
MCR10EZHF20.0K	RHM20.0KCCT-ND	20.0K
MCR10EZHF20.5K	RHM20.5KCCT-ND	20.5K

These are our parts and they will be added to the Resistor\Fixed\Thin Film Chip\Rohm\1%\1/8W family, and each will contain a Mfg #, Cat #, and Value property as shown below.

Property Name	Property Value
Mfg #	MCR10EZHF17.8K
Cat #	RHM17.8KCCT-ND
Value	17.8K

Those three properties are what is stored for each of the potentially thousands and thousands of fixed resistor parts. However, because of inheritance, when a query for a part is made the set of properties returned is usually more than just what is bound to a specific part. The returned list is called the effective properties for the part.

here is an example of the list of effective properties returned due to inheritance:

Property Name	Property Value
Mfg #	MCR10EZHF17.8K
Cat #	RHM17.8KCCT-ND
Value	17.8K
V Max	150V
Power	1/8W
Tol.	1%
Mfg.	Rohm
Symbol	Resistor
Footprint	RC0805L

You can see we pick up a substantial amount of nearly free data including the all-important symbol and footprint bindings.

:67 •



Before we proceed, we need to make a small clarification. What is shown as the **Symbol** property and the **Footprint** property are simplifications for clarity. The primary tool used to edit the taxonomy, which is called the Part Manager, actually provides graphical browsers to select the symbol and footprint for these properties. In reality, the browsers add two properties each. **Symbol** is actually two properties named SymName and SymLib. **Footprint** is actually FpName and FpLib. The library names are needed to fully resolve the location of a symbol or footprint.

Additionally, the Part Manager's interface includes several built-in property names to encourage their use. We have been used Mfg #, Cat #, Value, Tol, and Mfg in the above example, but in reality these property names are system-defined property names that map to:

Example Name	System-defined Property
Mfg #	_PARTNUMMFG
Cat #	_PARTNUMDIGIKEY
Value	_PARTVALUE
Tol	_PARTTOL
Mfg	_PARTMFG

Typically, you will not have to deal with these names because there is a user interface to deal with them. We just wanted to make you aware that not all the columns are as general as we have led on in the spirit of clarity. The above properties do in fact want to map to their specific system-defined property names because PCB123 will make great use of them.

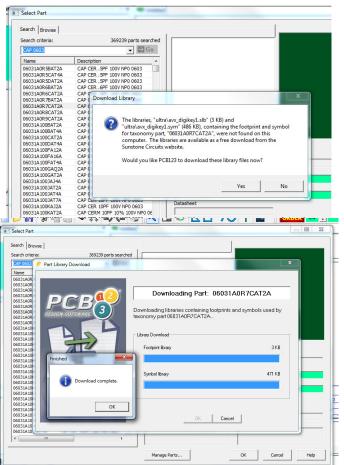
Pre-defined Parts

With the release of PCB123 V5, Sunstone has included an extensive updated parts library from Accelerated Designs in Hunstville, Alabama. PCB123 had included 750,000 of the most commonly used parts, and optimized this list to support parts

currently orderable in the Digi-Key catalog.

The initial installation of PCB123 will include a taxonomy file that contains the search criteria for all of the new parts, as well as full part definitions for the NXP parts library and generic parts. Because 750,000 parts can be a very large database, Sunstone has placed the complete parts database on a secure web server. To access the parts, users merely perform parameter searches, then select their part from the returned search results. If the selected part has not been copied to local storage, then PCB123 will prompt the user to initiate a parts family download.

When the download is completed, users will see the following dialogs. At this point, the parts family containing the selected part will be loaded to the user's local parts storage. In

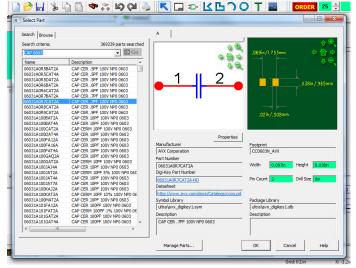




this way, users' individual needs will evolve the parts maintained locally.

Once the user returns to the parts selection dialog, shown here, the selected part will be fully loaded into the window.

Select OK, and you will be returned to the schematic edit window, with the selected component attached to the cursor for placement.



If you Find a Problem with a Pre-defined Part

Sunstone Circuits provides online and live technical support 24/7/365 for PCB123 at no cost. If you find a problem with a part in the Accelerated Designs Ultra Lib library, you can email the following information to **support@sunstone.com**:

- Part Name
- Library Name
- Description of the issue/problem
- A screenshot if possible

Sunstone Circuits and Accelerated Designs will then research and resolve the issue.

The Part Manager

If you create a generic symbol – a symbol without a footprint binding, no default entry will be created in the part taxonomy because it is considered "incomplete" for use in a schematic. There is no rule against adding an incomplete part to the taxonomy but it is assumed that generic symbols will never be



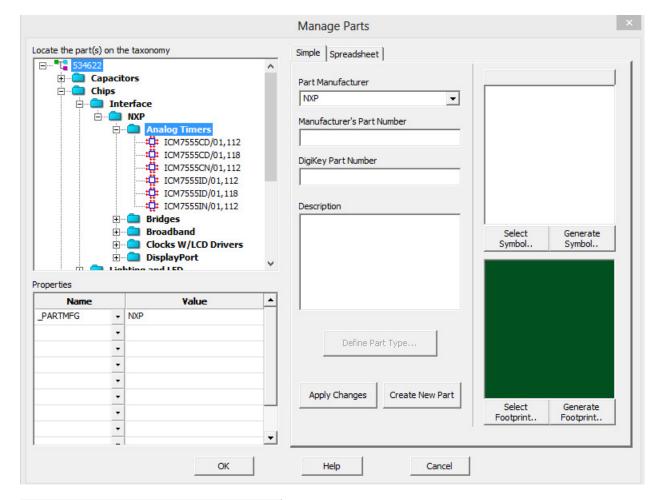
intentionally used as is. It is assumed you will create specific bindings to footprints using the Part Manager.



While in the schematic editor, the Part Manager may be invoked at any time from the Display Panel by pressing the

Manage Parts button. The Part Manager dialog is split into a left side and a right side as pictured below. In this example, we have drilled down into the Resistor part class, and through several Part Families to select an individual part in the tree on the left. The effective properties for the part are displayed in the grid on the right side. The properties displayed in red are inherited from the ancestors of the part, and the properties displayed in black are assigned directly to the part.

When you select and item this way, you may add, delete, or modify the properties of that item. If you click on a different item after changing the properties, the changes will be applied to the selected item before changing to the new selection.



	Create Subfolder	
	Edit Family Name	
	Find	Ctrl+F
	New parts go in this folder	

If you right-click on either Part Class items or Family items, you will be presented with a popup menu that allows you to perform several commands. **Create Subfolder** allows you to add structure to the taxonomy as you see fit. Families may be added under the root part classes and under other families. You may select **Edit**



Family Name, or just click on a family label two times to engage in-place editing of a family name.

Find allows you to search the taxonomy. **New Parts go in this folder** allows you to select a folder to store newly created parts. Left click on a folder to select it then right click and select **New Parts go in this folder**. Selecting the **Create Part** button will automatically store new parts in the selected folder.

Fill in the Properties shown in the center of the screen. The only required field in this section is Manufacturer's Part Number. Next use the **Select Symbol** and **Select Footprint** buttons to load the symbol and footprint for your taxonomy entry. You may also want to add more properties to your part. Go to the properties section and select the property name under the **Name** column then enter the appropriate value under the **Value** column. After entering all of the required part information select **Create New Part** to store the part in the taxonomy. If you want to modify an existing taxonomy entry select the part, edit the desired properties then select **Apply Changes**.

Entering part information one part at a time is not very much fun. If you only needed to specify one part then you may as well have bound a footprint right to the symbol when creating it with the Symbol Editor of Part Wizard. Where the Part Manager really becomes useful is when you have to create a number of parts.

Acquiring Data

There are two primary ways to acquire the data in PCB123 V5. One is to locate the part you seek in the PCB123 version of Accelerated Designs' Ultralib parts library. This is essentially a function of a parameter search inside the part taxonomy, followed by a potential part family download from the Sunstone server location. Alternately, if the part you seek is not currently defined in the Ultralib, you can create the part yourself.

Finding the Part in The Ultralibs Library

In PCB123 V5, users can search for parts using parametric data, from either the schematic tabs or from the layout tab. When using the Schematic tab, just select the Select Part dialog box (shown here) and enter appropriate search criteria in the search box. Here you can see we searched for a "RES 0402 1.0K" which will return all parts that contain all these search terms. The resulting list contains a number of 0402 sized SMT resistors. Users can then select any of these resistors to view the schematic, footprint and parametric data. In this example, we're looking a t a Yageo SMT from the Ultralibs parts.



		A		1
Search Browse		A		1:::
Search criteria:	893457 parts searched	A 🕀	° 🗠 🔍	
RES 0402 1.0K	🚽 🔁 Go		.041in/1.041mm 🗢 📅 🜩	
Name	Description 🔺			
9C04021A1001JLHF3	RES 1.0K OHM 1/16W 5% 0402 SM			
9C04021A2102FLHF3	RES 21.0K OHM 1/16W 1% 0402 S			
9C04021A2102FLHF3	RES 21.0K OHM 1/16W 1% 0402 S			
9C04021A5102FLHF3	RES 51.0K OHM 1/16W 1% 0402 S	·····	02in/.508mm	
9C04021A5102FLHF3	RES 51.0K OHM 1/16W 1% 0402 S			
9C04021A9102FLHF3	RES 91.0K OHM 1/16W 1% 0402 S			
9C04021A9102FLHF3	RES 91.0K OHM 1/16W 1% 0402 S			
9T04021A2102BAHF3	RES 21.0K OHM 1/16W .1% SMD 0			1.1.1
9T04021A2102BBHF3	RES 21.0K OHM 1/16W .1% SMD 0		.012in/.305mm	2
9T04021A2102CAHF3	RES 21.0KOHM 1/16W .25% SMD (2012(n) (200mm)	
9T04021A2102CBHF3	RES 21.0KOHM 1/16W .25% SMD (2
9T04021A2102DAHF3	RES 21.0K OHM 1/16W .5% SMD 0	1		201
9T04021A2102DBHF3	RES 21.0K OHM 1/16W .5% SMD 0	Properties	1	8 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
9T04021A2102FBHF3	RES 21.0K OHM 1/16W 1% SMD 04			4 9
9T04021A5102BAHF3	RES 51.0K OHM 1/16W .1% SMD 0	Manufacturer	Footprint	
9T04021A5102BBHF3	RES 51.0K OHM 1/16W .1% SMD 0	Yageo	RC0402L	12
9T04021A5102CAHF3	RES 51.0KOHM 1/16W .25% SMD (Part Number		
9T04021A5102CBHF3	RES 51.0KOHM 1/16W .25% SMD (9C04021A10011LHE3	Width 0.053in Height 0.02in	
9T04021A5102DAHF3	RES 51.0K OHM 1/16W .5% SMD 0			1.1.1.1
9T04021A5102DBHF3	RES 51.0K OHM 1/16W .5% SMD 0	Digi-Key Part Number		
9T04021A5102FBHF3	RES 51.0K OHM 1/16W 1% SMD 04	311-1.0KJCT-ND	Pin Count 2 Drill Size Oin	
9T04021A9102BAHF3	RES 91.0K OHM 1/16W .1% SMD 0	Datasheet		1
9T04021A9102BBHF3 9T04021A9102CAHF3	RES 91.0K OHM 1/16W .1% SMD 0	http://www.yageo.com/pdf/Pu-RC0402_51_I		1::::
9T04021A9102CAHF3	RES 91.0KOHM 1/16W .25% SMD (Package Library	1
9T04021A9102CBHF3	RES 91.0KOHM 1/16W .25% SMD (Symbol Library		
9T04021A9102DAHF3	RES 91.0K OHM 1/16W .5% SMD 0 RES 91.0K OHM 1/16W .5% SMD 0	ultra\digikey_res.sym	ultra\digikey_res.slb	
9T04021A9102DBHF3	RES 91.0K OHM 1/16W 1% SMD 04	Description	Description	
CRCW04021K00JNED	RES 1.0K OHM 1/16W 5% 0402 SM -	RES 1.0K OHM 1/16W 5% 0402 SMD		
				8
∢	4			
				n. Pa

This part is representative of most of the Accelerated Designs parts definitions: the schematic side symbol is defined and meaningful; the footprint is complete *and* includes dimensional measurements to help the user confirm the part; below is a list of parametric data including:

- Manufacturer
- Part Number this is the manufacturer's part number
- Digi-Key Part Number the orderable part number from Digi-Key for this component.
- Datasheet a link to the manufacturer's product data sheet. Useful for designers to either investigate a part more closely or to confirm the part performs as expected.
- Symbol Library where in the taxonomy does this part reside? Users can verify the source, whether the part comes from Accelerated Designs, from the PCB123 Generics, or from the user's custom-built libraries.
- Description typically this field holds a parameter string comparable to that used in a Digi-Key component search.
- Package Library Location for the footprint symbol.
- Width/Height dimensions for the part's physical packaging
- Pin Count number of pins for the package
- Drill Size for through-hole parts, the specified drill hole diameter for the part.

If this part suits your needs, just click the OK button and you will be returned to the schematic sheet and in part-placement mode, ready to include the part in your design. It's that easy.

=72 •



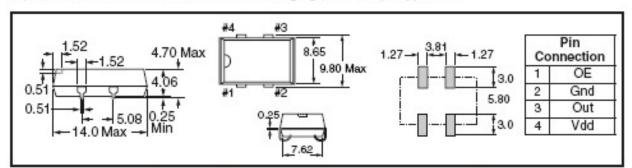
Each individual placement of this part then appears on the Bill of Materials tab, and the footprint is preplaced on the layout's origin, ready for placement and routing.

Creating the Part Yourself

Below is a sample of one part series from the Digikey catalog. It is a family of oscillators made by Citizen.

CMX309HWC Series Oscillators

Specifications: • Frequency Stability: ±100ppm • Operating Temperature: -20 °C ~ 70 °C • Storage Temperature: -55 °C ~ 125 °C • Supply Voltage: 5 V ±.5 V • Supply Current: 35 mA Max. • Duty @ TTL Level (1.4V): 45 % ~ 55 % • Duty @ CMOS Level (VDD/2): 40 % ~ 60 % • Output Voltage: -0.5 V (VOH) Min. • Output Voltage: .5 V (VOL) Max. • Output Load TTL: 10 TTL Max. • Output Load CMOS: 50 pF Max. • Rise Time TTL: 5 ns Max. • Fall Time TTL: 5 ns Max. • Rise Time CMOS: 7 ns Max. • Fall Time CMOS: 7 ns Max. • Start-up Time: 10 ms Max. • Output Enable-Voltage: 2 V (VIH) Min. • Output Enable-Voltage: .8 V (VIL) Max. • Disable Current: 28 mA Max. • Aging (First Year): ±5ppm Max.



Freq. (MHz)	Digi-Key Part No.	Citizen Part No.
32.0000	300-7101-1-ND	CMX309HWC32.000MT
32.7680	300-7102-1-ND	CMX309HWC32.768MT
33.0000	300-7103-1-ND	CMX309HWC33.000MT
33.3333	300-7104-1-ND	CMX309HWC33.3333MT
33.8688	300-7105-1-ND	CMX309HWC33.8688MT
40.0000	300-7107-1-ND	CMX309HWC40.000MT
44.2368	300-7108-1-ND	CMX309HWC44.2368MT
48.0000	300-7109-1-ND	CMX309HWC48.000MT
49.1520	300-7110-1-ND	CMX309HWC49.152MT
50.0000	300-7111-1-ND	CMX309HWC50.000MT
53.1250	300-7112-1-ND	CMX309HWC53.125MT
60.0000	300-7113-1-ND	CMX309HWC60.000MT
64.0000	300-7114-1-ND	CMX309HWC64.000MT
66.0000	300-7115-1-ND	CMX309HWC66.000MT
66.6667	300-7116-1-ND	CMX309HWC66.6667MT

Using shorthand, we can create each part in the series all at once. The first thing we want to do is create a place in the taxonomy for them. Under the Crystal part class, we will create the following families:



Oscillators

Surface Mount

Citizen

CMX309HWC Series

After creating the families and sub-families, click on the Citizen family item and enter Citizen in the Part Manufacturer Field then select **Apply Changes.**

Now, in the taxonomy tree, select the family you just created named **CMX309HWC Series**. We will be able to bind a good deal of information to this item.

The information above shows a single package being used for all the parts in the series. We can click on the Value ellipsis for SymName and FpName to select the symbol and footprint this series will use. On the next empty row in the grid, select Part Tolerance from the list of system-defined properties and enter +/-100ppm for its value.

Next, add the following custom properties to the grid, each one on a blank row:

Name	Value
SUPPLY_VOLTAGE	5V
SUPPLY_CURRENT	35mA
NOMINAL_DUTY	50%

Select Apply Changes.

We are now ready to create the parts under the selected family. We are going "screen scrape" the information for the parts. Since many part specifications are PDF files, we will use the Adobe Acrobat Reader as the example program where we are viewing part data. Acrobat Reader has

a tool called the Select tool whose icon is show to the left.

Clicking this icon put Reader in a mode that allows a block of text in the PDF to be selected and copied to the clipboard. This tool also has a secret mode that allows for columns of data to be selected. If you click on the beginning of the column you wish to copy and, while holding the Alt key down, drag to the end of the column, you can release the mouse button and you should see just that column highlighted. Press Ctrl+C or select Edit/Copy from the menu in Reader to copy that column to the clipboard. In our case, using the table above, we will column-select the values from the Freq.(Mhz) column taking care not to include the column title itself, and then press Ctrl+C to copy the values to the clipboard. You may want to paste the information to an Excel document to use later.

Back in PCB123, select the **CMX309HWC Series** item in the tree then select the Spreadsheet tab. Copy and paste the contents of the first row into the second row. This is the first instance of the parts you will create in this family. You can copy and paste each column of information from your data sheet into the appropriate column of the Spreadsheet tab. If you need to add more columns right click on an existing column label and select insert column. You can also delete or sort columns. Once the table data is complete you can select **Create/Update** button then choose the **CMX309HWC Series** family and store



your new parts. You will need to confirm each part because we have not yet assigned footprints and symbols to the taxonomy items.

This will Below is a picture of the newly created parts. The properties shown are for the selected new part. When you press Finish, the taxonomy is refreshed in the schematic editor.

			Manage Parts	×
	tors cs mily tors rface Mount Citizen CMX309HWC Series cmx309hwc32.000mt cmx309hwc32.768mt cmx309hwc33.3333m ors	t v	Simple Spreadsheet Part Manufacturer Image: Citizen Citizen Image: Citizen Manufacturer's Part Number Image: Citizen CMX309HWC32.768MT Image: Citizen DigiKey Part Number Image: Citizen 300-7102-1-ND Image: Citizen Description Image: Select generate symbol	
Properties Name _PARTMFG • _PARTNUMMFG • _PARTNUMMFG • SUPPLY_CURRENT • SUPPLY_VOLTAGE • _PARTNUMDIGIKE) • _PARTVALUE •	cmx309hwc32.768mt 50% 35mA 5V 300-7102-1-nd 32.768		Define Part Type Apply Changes Create New Part Select Footprint	
-	ОК]	Help Cancel	

The Symbol Editor

The symbol editor in PCB123 is a dialog box with a work area and a few toolbars, as shown below. The actual symbol editor is usually larger than the picture; it was compressed to fit on a page. The symbol editor is invoked from the Tools menu while in the schematic editor. Because it is a dialog box, no other work may proceed on a design until the symbol editor is dismissed.

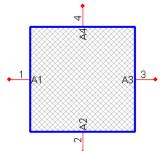
The symbol editor does not interact with any design; it only interacts with schematic symbol libraries. When it is invoked, a new symbol containing a placeholder for a reference designator is created. You may either begin adding objects to this symbol or load a different symbol from a library into the editor.



	Symbol Editor [New Symbol]	- 🗇 🗙
Symbol Panel	🗈 🖻 🖥 X 👎 🖺 IS O I 🖷 🕸 🚾 🗠 🗆 🖬 🗠 🗙 🗖 🗠 🗠 🗖	ŧ,
General	Symbol	<u> </u>
Symbol name Properties		^ 🖉
NEW SYMBOL		G
Beference designator prefix		
Section		
Properties		
Add New Add Existing Remove		
		>
Symbol 🎬 Pins	For Help, press F1	lin 1.1in

Inside/Outside

You may have noticed the crosshatched rectangle in the work area in the above picture. This rectangle

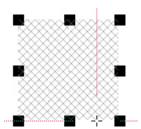


represents the interior portion of the symbol. Symbols are divided into an interior and exterior. Shapes will always reside in the interior of a symbol and pins always on the exterior, as shown to the left.

When adding pins, they will always be confined to the perimeter of the rectangle with the hotspot always pointing outwards.

If you draw a shape that extends outside the rectangle, the rectangle will be enlarged to encompass the shape. Any pins present on the sides that enlarge

will move with the new rectangle. This is all done automatic for you.



You may also change the size of the rectangle yourself. With the Select tool active, you can move the cursor to any corner or edge of the rectangle to display drag handles, as show at left. Clicking and dragging one of these handles allows you to adjust the size of the rectangle. The rectangle cannot shrink smaller than the shapes it contains.

Besides being constrained to the rectangle edges, pins will always be located on a fixed grid, called the unit grid. The size of this grid happens to be 0.1'' and is

immutable for pin placement. This restriction, coupled with symbol rotations restricted to 90° steps,



ensures that all pins land on a uniform grid on a schematic page, which in turn ensures wires are drawn on a uniform grid.

The Wire Router also takes advantage of the inside/outside separation by not routing into the interior of any symbol, which in turn means it will not cross any lines of a symbol.

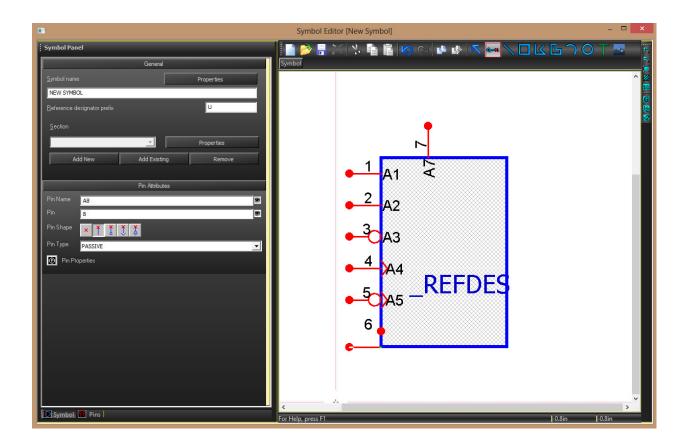
Text is under no such restrictions. It may be placed inside or outside the rectangle. The Wire Router currently ignores text and may route through it.

The working grid in the symbol editor may be adjusted either in half 4 by pressing the Minus key (-) or doubled 3 by pressing the Plus key (+). This is only effective when drawing shapes or placing text. When placing pins the grid is always set to the unit grid.

Adding pins

Pictured below is the symbol editor as it appears with the Pin tool selected. It has been shrunk to view all the salient features in one picture. As soon as the Pin tool is selected, a new pin will be created that will track the cursor while staying constrained to the interior rectangle. As the pin is moved, it will snap to the unit grid and will automatically change orientation as it is moved to different edges of the rectangle.

While a pin is being moved, the Pin Attributes pane will be active on the left panel. It is here that you may fill out the information about the pin.





To release the pin at the desired location, just click the left mouse button. Adding pins is modal. When you left-click and place a pin, another one is created whose pin name and number are either autogenerated based on the last pin name or number, or they are obtained from a macro expansion. You must cancel out of the Add Pin mode by pressing the Esc key, selecting Cancel from the context menu, or selecting a different tool.

After creating two pins, a "stride" has been established that successive pins will add to the last pin location to derive a default location for the next pin. Both the pin and the cursor are snapped to this location allowing a whole row or column of pins to be quickly added by simply left-clicking without moving the mouse.

By default, the auto-generated pin name and number take the first sequence of digits from the previous pin name/pin number, and increment them by one. If no digits were present, it will change to the next letter in the alphabet.

At any time you may use bracketed shorthand notation in either the pin name field or the pin number field to establish a continuous sequence or a disjoint sequence of pin names and pin numbers to use for consecutive pins. The lifetime of the shorthand sequence is the duration of the pin tool being active. Once you cancel the pin tool, any remaining names in a shorthand sequence will be dropped.

A pin name and number must be supplied for a pin. If you are tempted to set a pin name or number to empty because you do not want it displayed, supply the name or number anyway and click on the eye icon B to the right of the field so it shows this B icon. This sets the visibility of the pin name or number to invisible.

In the above picture, an example of each pin shape is shown. The pin shapes themselves carry no meaning in the software; they are merely added as a convenience so you do not have to draw the dot and clock symbolisms yourself.

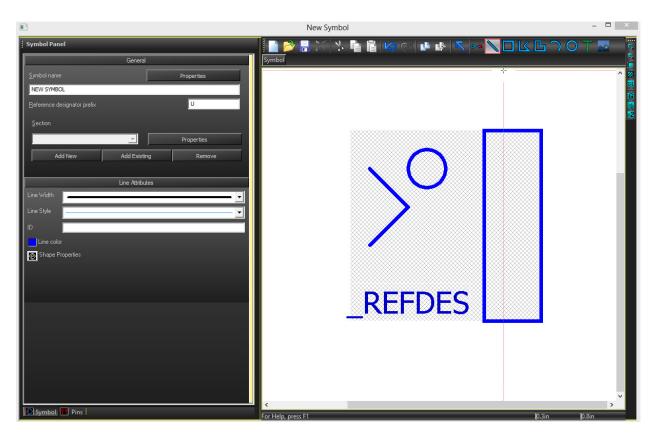
Pin types do carry meaning in the software. The list of pin types forms a matrix of rules that specify which pin types are allowed to connect to other pin types. This is used during the automatic creation of wires when unconnected pins from two devices are placed on top of each other and during an Electrical Rules Check (Not yet implemented in this release). By default, a pin is assigned the Passive pin type that is allowed to connect to any other pin type except N/C pins. It is recommended that you supply a pin type for symbol pins if you have the correct information at hand.

Finally, the pin properties button 🙆 presents the standard Properties Dialog where you may specify any custom properties that you may wish to attach to a pin.

Adding Shapes

Pictured below is the symbol editor with the Shape tool selected. It also shows an outline shape and a filled shape that have already been created.





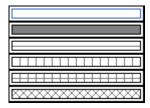
When a shape tool is selected, the symbol editor is placed in a mode where it is waiting for the first corner to be created by clicking anywhere in the work area. Once a corner has been created, a rubber band is drawn from the last corner to the current gridded cursor position. Clicking the left mouse button creates additional corners.

You can continuously "erase" the last segment by drawing back over the segment and click on the previous corner.

Finishing the shape can be done in two ways; the first way is to cancel or escape out of the mode and is the method to use when creating open polylines of one or more segments, or you can close the shape by creating the last corner at the same location as the first corner. This assumes there are at least 3 corners not in a line. Once finished, you are free to begin drawing another shape. Pressing escape or cancelling once again will put you back into the Select tool.

You may change the width or thickness of a shape outline by selecting one of the pre-defined line widths from the drop list in the Shapes attribute pane. These widths are provided for consistency. If a different width is required, you can specifically add a _LINEWIDTH property to the shape and setting it to the desired value.

Another outline attribute you may change is the Line Style. By default, shapes use a solid line style. Other styles are dotted, dashed, and dot-dashed lines. Only the solid line style will display outlines in true thickness.



The interior of a shape is controlled by the Fill Style attribute. By default, the fill style of a shape is hollow. The picture to the left shows the different fill styles



available in the drop list. They are, in order from the top, Hollow, Solid, Horizontal Hatched, Vertical Hatched, Cross Hatched, and Diagonal Hatched. Selecting any fill style other than hollow will automatically close the shape if not already so.

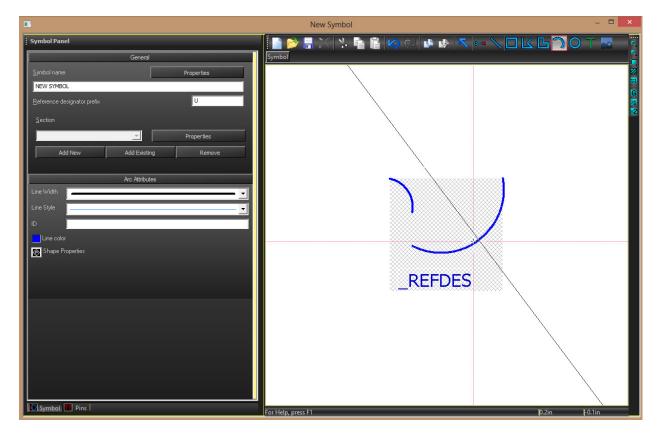
The color of the outline and the shape interior may be independently set in the Shape Attributes pane.

Shapes may be assigned an ID. This can be any text string. The ID will play a role in upcoming releases as a means to programmatically identify shapes.

Finally, the Shape properties button is presents the standard Properties Dialog where you may specify any custom properties that you may wish to attach to a shape.

Adding Arcs

Pictured below is the symbol editor with the Arc tool selected. It shows an arc in the process of being created.



Creating an arc requires three clicks of the mouse. When the Arc tool is selected, the symbol editor is placed in a mode where it is waiting for the first click, which represents one end of the arc. The next click will be the other end, and the last click will be the arc apex. Once the first corner has been created, a rubber band is drawn showing the arc progress and a perpendicular guide is drawn showing the line upon which the apex may land.

80 •



The arc is automatically finished after the apex has been defined, and the symbol editor will be ready to create another one.

At any point during the arc creation, you may cancel or press the Esc key. Pressing escape or cancelling once again will put you back into the Select tool.

You may change the width or thickness of an arc by selecting one of the pre-defined line widths from the drop list in the Shapes attribute pane. These widths are provided for consistency. If a different width is required, you can specifically add a _LINEWIDTH property to the shape and setting it to the desired value.

Another outline attribute you may change is the Line Style. By default, arcs use a solid line style. Other styles are dotted, dashed, and dot-dashed lines. Only the solid line style will display outlines in true thickness.

Currently, arcs have no interior. They are outline objects only. The color of an arc outline may be set in the Shape Attributes pane.

Arcs may be assigned an ID. This can be any text string. The ID will play a role in upcoming releases as a means to programmatically identify shapes and arcs.

Finally, the Shape properties button 🙆 applies to arcs and presents the standard Properties Dialog where you may specify any custom properties that you may wish to attach to an arc.

Adding Text

When you select the Insert Text tool, you will be immediately prompted for a text string to add using the dialog box shown below. If you have defined a user property with the same name as the string you enter

Add Text	
Enter a text string, the name of a user property, or select a system property from the list	
<u> </u>	•
FOOTPRINT LIBRARY	
LAST MODIFIED DATE	
LINE COLOR	
LINE STYLE	
LINE WIDTH	
MFG. PART NO.	

here, the text string will be substituted with the value of the property. You may also expand the drop list to select the name of a system-defined property that will be substituted.

Once the string is defined, a text object will be attached to the cursor until you cancel or release the text string by left clicking.

After you place the text object, you will be prompted for another string. To exit either the dialog box or the

Add Text Mode, press the Esc key or select cancel for a context menu.

The picture below shows the Symbol Editor while in Add Text mode.

81 •

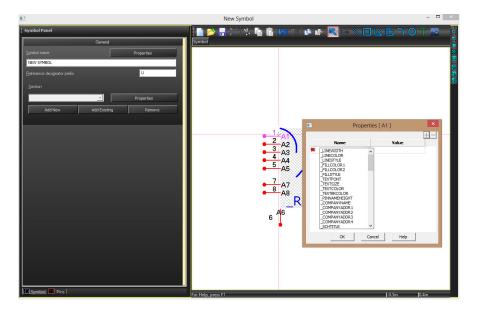


	New Symbol	- 🗆 🗙
Symbol Panel		
D Symbol 🎬 Pins	For Help, press F1	0.2in 0in

Text attributes can be changed as you define text strings. Attributes include changing: font size, rotation, text color, background color, and alignment.

Adding properties

To add a property to a symbol component, right mouse-click on the component and select Properties... from the context menu. The picture below shows the Properties dialog for a pin in the symbol editor.





Users can select from the list of predefined properties, or create user-defined custom properties. Clicking OK stores the property on the property list for the symbol component.

Saving symbols

Click the SAVE icon in the Symbol Editor to save the symbol to the taxonomy. The picture below shows the Save Symbol dialog box. The Save Symbol dialog

me

box contains three fields you must specify to complete save process.

The Name of the Symbol will be the identifying name the symbol will use. Be descriptive.

The Description is a text field in which you can describe the symbol in more detail.

Parts Library, customer\generics.sym by default, is the library location to which the part symbol will be saved. There is also a New Library... button to allow

	Save Symbol		? 🛛
_	Enter name of symbol		
ertie	NEW SYMBOL		
mo	Enter description		
	Select library to save into	1	New Library
	custom\generics.sym		•
	ОК	Cancel	Help

you the ability to create a new custom library on-the-fly for your newly designed symbol.

Sections

You can schematically represent a single layout footprint with a symbol comprised of several sections. This is often done to represent the various gates of a particular component. To add additional sections select the "Add New" button. If you want to add a new section with an existing symbol select the "Add Existing" button. If you need to remove a section select the "Remove" button. You can change the letter shown under section to view and edit any of the sections you have added or created.

Binding to specific symbols

The process of binding together a schematic symbol (or set of sections) and a layout footprint happens in the Define Part dialog (shown in the figure below)



Define Part		×
Locate the part(s) on the taxonomy Locate the part(s) on the taxonomy	Simple Spreadsheet Part Manufacturer	
Properties Name Value	Description	Select Generate Symbol Symbol
	Define Part Type Apply Changes Create New Part	Select Generate Footprint Footprint
•		

If you have already defined, or located, suitable symbols for schematic and footprint, you can quickly bind them together here.

Schematic Symbol – click on Select Symbol... navigate to the schematic symbol, and select it. The schematic symbol appears in the schematic symbol preview window

Footprint - click on Select Footprint... navigate to the footprint and select it. The footprint appears in the footprint preview window.

Specify the part meta-data, part manufacturer, manufacturer part number, DigiKey Part number and a description, then select Create New Part

If you wish to update the properties or symbols to an existing part, you can do that too. Just navigate the taxonomy to your part, then select it to load it into the Define Part dialog. Make the necessary changes, then select Apply Changes (instead of Create New Part) and submit your updates to the part definition.

Mapping pin names to pin numbers

Using the Symbol Editor in PCB123 V5 it's easy to map pin names to pin numbers. In this figure (below) the assignment of pin names and numbers can easily be changed on the fly. Just click on the appropriate text box for the pin number of the pin name, and replace the existing value with the new value.

84 •

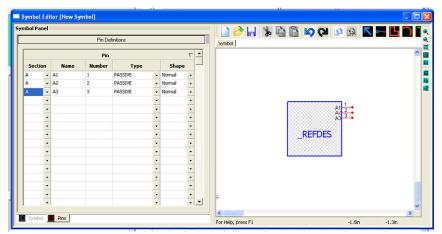


	anel		Dia Da	finitions	_		_		📃 📂 🖬 🐌		M 📭 🚯 🔽 🗠
			Pin De	annuons					Symbol		
			Pin				∇				
Sec	tion	Name	Number	Туре		Shape	·	1			
A	-	A1	1	PASSIVE	•	Normal	-				
A	-	A2	2	PASSIVE	•	Normal	-				
A	-	A3	3	PASSIVE	•	Normal	•		- -	1	
A	-	A4	4	PASSIVE	•	Normal	-			.13	XXXXX •
A	-	A5	5	PASSIVE	•	Normal	-			• ¹³ ×1	
A	-	A6	6	PASSIVE	-	Normal	-				
A	-	X2	13	PASSIVE	•	Normal	-				A3 4
A	-	X1	12	PASSIVE	•	Normal	-			_REFD	ES A5 5
	-				-		-				A6
	-				•		-				
	-				•		-				
	-				•		•				
	-				•		•				
	-				•		-				
	-				•		-				
	-				•		•				
									<		

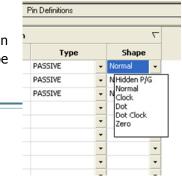
Pin numbers can be in non-sequential order, pin names can be functional. Each pin number must be unique to the part, but pin names can be duplicated as needed.

Hidden pins

Hidden pins are often used to provide power and ground connections to components, but not clutter the schematic views with all the power related routing.



By clicking on the Pins tab at the bottom of the Symbol Editor pane, you can access the Pin properties table, as shown in the figure above. The Shape





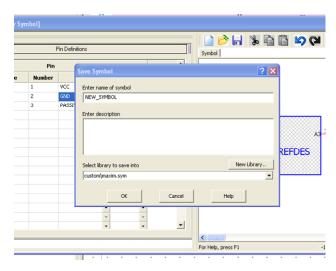
column allows users to specify a number of pin configurations, including Hidden P/G.

Once a pin is hidden, the pin structure for that pin disappears from the symbol graphics. The pin, however, is still present in the part definition.

A hidden pin is required to be identifed as either a power or a ground pin. You will not be allowed to save your component until each hidden pin is so designated. To specify the type for the hidden pins, select the appropriate setting from the choices in the Type column pull down menu.

Saving parts

When you are ready to save your part to a library, select the SAVE function 📕 from the toolbar.



The SAVE function gives you access to the Save Symbol dialog, as shown in the figure above. Enter your name for the new symbol, an optional description, then the symbol (.sym) library to which the part will be added. If you need to create a new library, use the New Library... button on the dialog box.



Finding Parts

In PCB123, locating schematic parts for use in your design falls into two primary methodologies: *Searching* and *Browsing*.

Searching: You enter search criteria; PCB123 filters the entire domain of available parts to match your search criteria. The PCB123 search mechanism is quite flexible, using a generally free-form text search that scans properties, property values, and part names for text string matches.

Browsing: allows you to click-navigate the taxonomy to find appropriate parts.

Further details for both methods of finding schematic parts can be highly effective, depending upon what you need at the time.

Part search

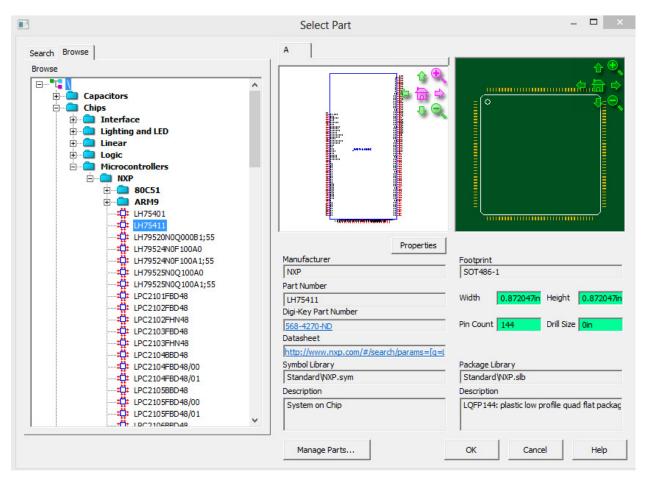
Searching for parts by search criteria is highly effective when you know one or more key parameters for the part you require.

Select Part		
Search Browse	Define New Part	Symbol
Search criteria: (separate terms with a	comma or chace)	
Source certain (Separate terms mare		
1		
Name	Description 🔼 🔨	
RG1005V-1.0K-P-T1		REFDES
RG1005V-1.1K-P-T1		
RG1005V-1.2K-P-T1		
RG1005V-1.3K-P-T1		
RG1005V-1.5K-P-T1		•••
RG1005V-1.8K-P-T1		
RG1005V-100-P-T1		
RG1005V-110-P-T1		PARTVALUE
RG1005V-120-P-T1		
RG1005V-130-P-T1		
RG1005V-150-P-T1		
RG1005V-180-P-T1		,
RG1005V-2.2K-P-T1		
RG1005V-2.7K-P-T1		e 🕀 🕀 💭
RG1005V-220-P-T1		
RG1005V-270-P-T1		(2x Scale) 🗢 🛱 🜩
RG1005V-330-P-T1		(In Score)
RG1005V-390-P-T1		
RG1005V-510-P-T1		10 T
RG1005V-560-P-T1		揭, 7 19. 积, 8
RG1005V-680-P-T1		
RG1005V-820-P-T1		
RG1608N-1.0K-W-T1		49.2
RG1608N-1.1K-W-T1		19.7
RG1608N-1.2K-W-T1		
RG1608N-1.3K-W-T1		Default Padstyle: RX31.5Y19.7D0T
RG1608N-1.5K-W-T1		Derouri Puostyle: RX31.3119.7001
RG1608N-1.6K-W-T1	~	
DC1608NL1 8K-W-T1		
ок	Help	Cancel

Just type the parameters into the Search Criteria field, and the Select Part dialog filters the parts list down to the existing parts containing that criteria.



When browsing for parts, the taxonomy representation comes into play. As shown in the figure below, users can browse through the hierarchical folder structure interactively until locating the desired part.



If, in either case, the user cannot locate a predefined part to suit the specific design needs, the next step may be to build a new part from scratch.

Define New Part

The Manage Parts button at the bottom of the Select Part dialog starts the new part definition process. Clicking the Manage Parts button takes you to the Manage Part dialog, shown below. The Manage Part dialog is quite powerful and flexible in how it approaches parts definitions. The key parts of the Define Part dialog include:

- The Parts Taxonomy pane
- The Properties definition table
- The Simple Tab for component specification
- The Spreadsheet Tab for advanced component specification
- The symbol pane, showing the assigned symbol graphics
- The footprint pane, showtin the assigned layout graphics.

88 •



		Manage Parts	×
Locate the part(s) on the taxo	nomy	Simple Spreadsheet	
Image: Signature Signature Image: Signature Capacitors Image: Signature Chips Image: Signature Diodes Image: Signature Generics Image: Signature New Family Image: Signature Oscillators Image: Signature Resistors Image: Signature Transistors Image: Signature Ultra Library		Part Manufacturer Manufacturer's Part Number DigiKey Part Number	
Properties		Description	Select Generate Symbol Symbol
Name	Yalue 🔺		
		Define Part Type Apply Changes Create New Part	Select Generate Footprint Footprint
	ОК	Help Cancel	

Whether you're putting together a collection of pre-existing symbols to configure a new part, or whether you're building everything from scratch, you'll probably want to start by locating the taxonomy destination for the part before you do anything else.

In the figure below, the user is creating a subfolder in the taxonomy to hold the soon-to-be-designed component definitions. The context menu in this figure comes from right-clicking the mouse on an entry in the taxonomy window. Right-Clicking in this manner provides access to a number of commands for editing, organizing and modifying the taxonomy and its components.



	Manage Parts	×
Locate the part(s) on the taxonomy	Simple Spreadsheet Part Manufacturer National Semiconductor Manufacturer's Part Number Create Subfolder Edit Family Name Find Delete custom family New parts go in this folder	Generate Symbol
Properties Name Value _PARTMFG • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •		Generate Footprint.

Once the taxonomy location has been identified, the next step is to fill in the Manufacturer information, manufacturer part number, and Digi-Key part number, if known. User can also provide a free-text description of the component in the Description field. Notice that, as the part number information is filled out, a property entry for that information is automatically added to the Properties table in the lower left corner of the Define Part dialog.



ocate the part(s) o	n the taxonomy	Simple Spreadsheet
		A Part Manufacturer National Semiconductor ✓ Manufacturer's Part Number D3000IC DigiKey Part Number D3000IC-ND
E Diod		
⊕ <mark>⊡</mark> Osci ⊕ ⊡ Resi ⊕ ⊡ test	Family llators stors	✓ Description Select Generate Symbol
Resi	Family llators stors	Select Generate Symbol Symbol
operties	Family llators stors	Select Generate Symbol
PARTNUMMFG PARTNUMMFG	Family llators stors visitor Value National Semiconductor D3000IC	Select Generate Symbol Symbol
PARTNUMMFG	Family llators stors visitor Value National Semiconductor D3000IC	Select Generate Symbol
operties PARTMUMMFG PARTMUMMFG	Family llators stors visitional visiti	Select Generate Symbol Symbol Define Part Type Apply Changes Create New Part
New New Osci Troperties	Family llators stors v National Semiconductor v D3000IC v D3000IC-ND v v	Select Generate Symbol Symbol

Next up, is binding symbols and footprints to the part definition. Starting with the schematic symbol, the user has two choices: Select a Symbol, or Generate a Symbol.

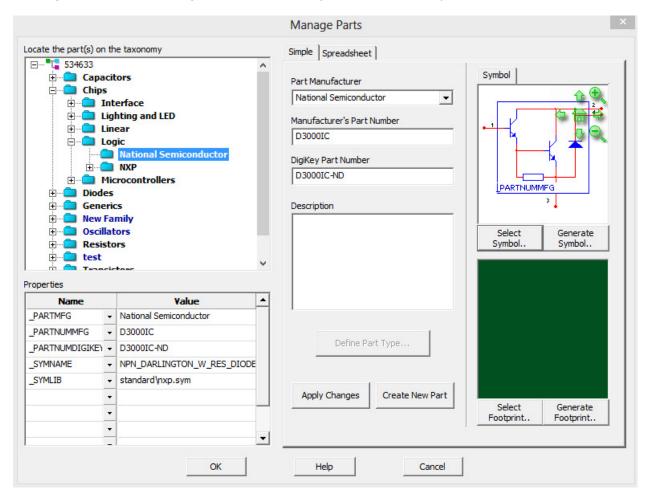
Selecting a symbol presents the user with a search dialog, as shown below. Locate the symbol of your choice, using search parameters.

=91 •



Assign Symbol to Part	
Step 1: Search * and ? are wild Begins with Contains RES Go	Preview Symbol
Active library	
Static RESISTOR RESISTOR	└ ▼
VAR_RESISTOR RESISTOR_PACK_BPOS NOJORESISTOR NPN_DARLINGTON_W_RES_DIODE	_PARTNUMMEG
NPN_DARLINGTON_W_RES_DIODE2	Library
	custom\nxp.sym Symbol NPN_DARLINGTON_W_RES_DIODE
Step 3: Insert	Footprint Description
Assign Symbol Cancel	

Once located, click on the Assign Symbol button to bind the schematic symbol to the part definition, resulting in a Define Part dialog that shows the newly bound schematic symbol.





Now, bind the footprint. Like selecting the schematic symbol, users have two choices: Select a footprint, or Generate a footprint.

Select Footprint		? 🗙
Step 1: Search * and ? are wild C Begins with C Contains C Begins with C Contains C Begins with C Contains C Begins with C Contains Simple Search Filter Step 3: Insert Select Cancel	Step 2: Select	Preview:
Libraries included in search filter:	Footprinks used:	Footprint details: Number of pins Drill Size Body Width Height Library Footprint Description

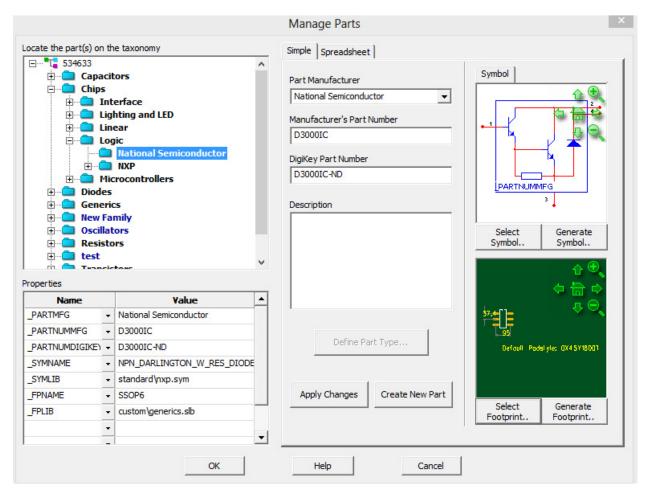
Selecting a footprint presents the user with this Select Footprint dialog.

Following a usage model similar to the schematic selection process, In step one, users can search for a component by parameter, or browse the footprint libraries using the taxonomy-like view in the lower left corner of the dialog box. In step two, you select the footprint that matches the component you have under definition. For step three, click the Select button in the center left. The figure below shows a Select Footprint dialog box ready for the binding process.

Step 1: Search * and ? are wild	Step 2: Select	Preview:
C Begins with Contains	SSOP30, 30 pins, 0.025in x 0.276in SSOP36, 36 pins, 0.45in x 0.0394in SSOP44, 44 pins, 0.37in x 0.0315in SSOP46, 49 pins, 0.38in x 0.025in	
Example: MOLEX, LED, 1206, D04	SSOP56, 56 pins, 0.38in x 0.025in SSOP6, 6 pins, 0.095in x 0.0374in	
Simple Search Filter	SSOP8, 8 pins, 0.025in x 0.276in SW1, 3 pins, 2.3368mm TO220_OPT, 4 pins, 0.1in x 0.7in	
Step 3: Insert	TQFP44_10X10M, 44 pins, 0.7874mm x 0.78 TQFP64_14X14, 66 pins, 1.7272mm x 1.727 TQFP80_14X14, 82 pins, 1.4478mm x 1.4478	95 Default Podstyle: 0X45Y1600
Select	TSOP16, 16 pins, 0.6604mm x 13.4112mm TSOP24, 24 pins, 0.02in x 0.606in TSOP28, 28 pins, 0.015in x 0.684in	
Cancel	TSOP32, 32 pins, 0.4826mm x 15.3924mm TSOP36, 36 pins, 0.3048mm x 19.4056mm TSOP40, 40 pins, 0.4064mm x 17.3736mm	
ibraries included in search filter:	Footprints used:	Footprint details:
		Number of pins 6 Drill Size 0
Generics.slb		
NI CRIO PARTS.slb		Body Width 0.77775in Height 0.30955
V II NI CRIO PARTS.slb V II nojo.slb V II NXP.slb V II NXP.slb V FpGenerated.slb		Body Width 0.77775in Height 0.30955
V NI CRIO PARTS.slb		Library custom\generics.slb
V II NI CRIO PARTS.slb V II nojo.slh V II NXP.slb V II NXP.slb V II FpGenerated.slb		Library



At this point, we've created a fully defined part. The figure below shows how the Define Part dialog box might look after binding both the schematic symbol and the footprint.



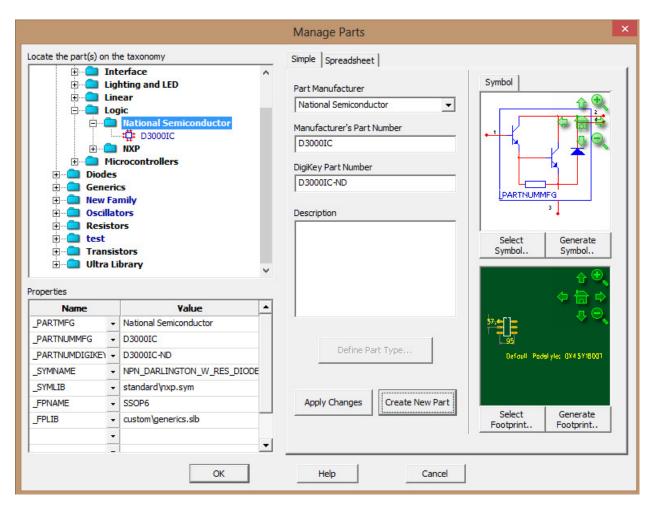
Click Create New Part, and reconfirm the location in the taxonomy. Once the part has been created, it appears in the taxonomy pane:



Locate the part(s) or	n the taxonomy								
i 🕂 👘 🕺	Interface	~							
🕀 💼 Lighting and LED									
🕀 💼 Linear									
📄 💼 I	Logic								
D(National Semiconductor								
→									
	Microcontrollers								
🗄 💼 Diod	es								
🗄 🖷 💼 Generics									
	Family								
📋 🕀 🛄 Oscil	lators								
📄 🗄 🛄 Resi	stors								
🗄 🖃 test									
	sistors								
🗄 🖳 Ultra Library									
Properties									
Name	Name Value								
_PARTMFG	 National Semiconductor 								
PARTNUMMEG - D3000IC									

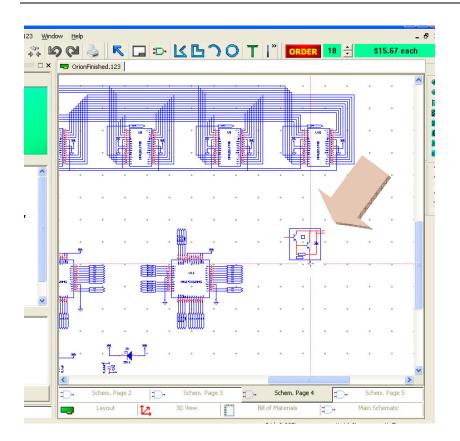
When you click OK on the Manage Parts dialog, you will be returned to the Select Part dialog (where this all started). Now, you will notice that your newly created part is available for use in the Select Part taxonomy, as shown below.





Select your part, and click the OK button. Your part is now ready to be placed in your design's schematic. The figure below shows the part ready for placement.





Ports

A port is used to add a net label to pin, wire or group of connections on the schematic. Ports can be used to make connections between pins without connecting the pins with a wire. Ports can also be used to make connections between schematic pages.

PCB123 provides you with an AGND, DGND, Voltage, Global and Off-Page port. The labels for the AGND and DGND ports can be changed. You can select a port from the menu bar by selecting Insert > Add Port. A port tool bar is also included on the far right side of screen.

Ports and net names

After selecting either the Voltage, Global or Off-Page port you can change the net name assigned to it. You should see the Edit Panel in the on the left side of the screen. If you do not see the edit panel select View > Toolbars > Edit Panel. Start by selecting the desired port. Next, go to the top section of the edit panel. It should now show the label Net Name(s). Type in the desired net label in the Net Name(s) field then place the port and connect it to a pin or wire. If you have already placed a port, and wish change the assigned net, then left-click on the port to select it. You will now see the Net

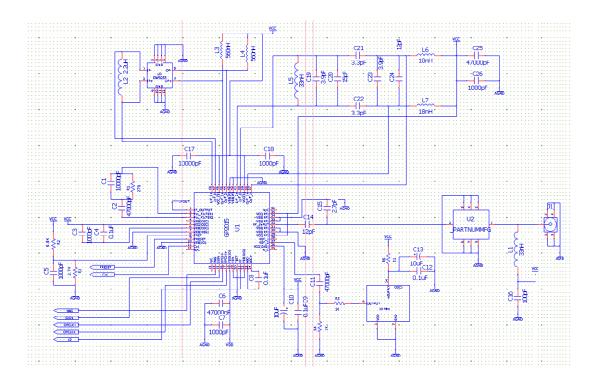


Name(s) section in the Edit Panel. Update the text in the Net Name(s) field and replace the port. When you place the port you will see the message "Do you want to rename all ports 'Net Name' to 'NewNetName'?" If you select Yes, all ports of net name NetName will be changed to NewNetName. If you select No, only the selected port will change to the new net name.



Schematic Pages

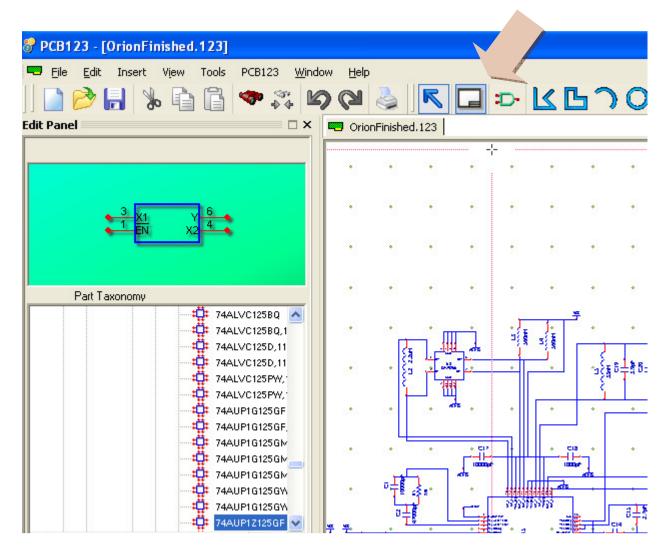
PCB123 can support multi-page schematic designs, allowing you to create logical sub-designs to manage the complexity of the schematic design.





Adding Schematic Pages

To add a new, blank sheet you your design project, click the Add Page item on the Toolbar (highlighted below) and a new, blank schematic sheet will be added to your design. The default name for the new sheet will be "Schem Page x". A Schematic title block will also be attached to the new sheet.



Screen clipping taken: 11/6/2009, 3:42 PM



Synchronization pages

A Synchronization page is a special type of schematic page used to capture ad hoc symbols created for footprints not defined on the schematic side.

The Title Block

The Project tab contains several report generators and a top-level navigator in the form of a tree that allows you to drill down into the schematic and layout data in minute detail. It also contains many top-level settings and defaults such as title block parameters that can be set for a project.

Edit Panel								
Statistics Report	Netlist Report	BOM Report						
Board Configuration								
□ 🔁 PCB Node □ 🔁 Schematic Node								
Sche	amatic Properties							
Name		/alue						
Company Name	Company							
Address Line 1	Address 1	L						
Address Line 2	Address 2	2						
Address Line 3	Address 3	3						
Address Line 4	Address 4	ł						
Schematic Title		ign title here						
Schematic Descripti	on Enter des	cription here						
Schematic Revision	1.0							
Document Number	0000-000	0-00						
Cage Code								
Author		<u> </u>						
😫 Display 📘 P	Project 🛨 DRC/	ERC						



Page size

To set the page size for a schematic sheet, right click in the schematic pane. Select the Set Page Size... command from the Context commands, below.

Ţ	•	•		÷.]	T.111	÷		•	•		•	•			•	H		
	٠			. 1	9	•		٠			٠	•			٠	H		
•	٠Ī	-		٠	٠	•		٠	•		٠	٠		•	٠			٠
) in	*	•	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	•	\$	Unstone (arouits	Quion Gi	•	*	4		٠
•	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	-			ARVISO-B	•	• <u></u> , 10			٠
+ -	+ -	+ -	+		-	+ "	1 "	+ -			1			+		1	•	•
•	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	٠	•	•	٠	٠	•	•	٠	•	•	٠
*	٠	٠	•	C Can	ontex cel	t Con		ls sc	•	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	•	٠
•	*	•	•	Cut				trl+X	•	•	*	٠	•	•	٠	٠	٠	٠
•	•	٠	•	Cop Pasi			C	trl+C trl+V	÷	•	•	•	•	•	+	٠		•
٠	•	٠	•	Dele		C:			••	•	٠	•	٠	•	٠	•	*	٠
٠	٠	٠	•		Page perties						٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	•	٠
•	٠	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	•	•	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	•	٠
•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
															1	11		
S	chem. I	Page 3	3		•	Sche	m. Paç	ge 4	:	D•	So	:hem.	Page 5		: D•	8	Schen	n. Paç
Lay	out	12,	2	3D Vie	W		Bi	ll of M	aterial	s	Ð	M	ain Sche	ematic	1	⊃•	Sch	em. P
											Grid	0.00	5in		X: 9	.3in		Y: -
																_		

The page size is specifiable by individual sheets. Your multi-page schematic design can accommodate multiple page sizes at the same time.

The Schematic Editor

PCB123 allows you to design your schematic and simultaneously populate your layout with the parts in your design. By default, each PCB123 design file contains a minimum of one associated schematic page, labeled as Main Schematic. In the Main Schematic tab you will find all the tools to locate, create, place and connect all the components that will comprise your board.

Adding parts to a page

Upon opening the Main Schematic tab you should be able to view the Part Taxonomy tab within the Edit Panel. (If you cannot view the Edit Panel, choose View>Toolbars>Edit Panel). Here in the Part Taxonomy you are able to drill down into one of the folders that organize parts, such as Generics>Chips>Dips in order to find all of the available generic symbols for dual inline packages. You can simply click on the part you wish to place then click on the schematic to place it. This provides a quick way to sort through available symbols by category.

You can also right click on any folder in the taxonomy list and choose Find to search for particular part numbers or types of parts. You could search for "amp" in order to find all parts that have been identified as amplifiers. Once the first matching item is found you can press F3 or right click and choose Find Next to select the next part that matches your criteria. This allows a more thorough search by specific criteria.

Once highlighted, a part is ready to place as soon as the cursor is moved back into the Main Schematic page.

To search for parts with more detail, one can use the Add Parts window. The button to open this window is represented by the NAND gate symbol in the Standard Toolbar. Once open users are first presented with the Search tab view. Here one can enter search criteria and click GO. Unlike the Part Taxonomy view, every part found will be visible at once in the list displayed on the right. This allows one to quickly cycle between each located part and view them in greater detail.

Pressing OK will close the Add Parts window and move the focus back to the Main Schematic tab. Here you can simply click to place the selected part.

Adding ports to a page

You are able to add ports to your schematic from two locations. The first location is on the menu bar. Select Insert > Add Port to select a AGND, DGND, Voltage, Global or Off-Page Port. Your second option for placing port is located on the far right side of your screen on the Ports toolbar.



Once you have selected the desired port you can place the port on your schematic with a left click. If you have selected a Voltage, Global or Off Page port you can modify the Net Name.

With the port selected look to the top section of the Edit Panel and type in the desired net label in the Net Name(s) field. You cannot change the net name assigned to a AGND or DGND port.



To add a port to the schematic page currently under edit, select the port type you require from the Insert>Add Port menu. Port types available from this menu include:

Edit Panel	□ ×
Net Name(s)	Shortcuts
+5V	- +
Part Taxonomy	
🖲 🧰 Resistors	
📔 🕀 🧰 Chips	

- Analog Ground (AGND)
- Digital Ground (DGND)
- Voltage
- Global Net
- Off-Page Port

Select the type of port you require, and the port is assigned to the cursor for placement in the schematic. Place the port as many times as your require, then press the ESC key to unbind the port.

In the case of a voltage port, a global port and an off-page port, selecting the port will also present you with a pane in the edit panel. This pane can be used to set the specific voltage value or

net name for the port to be placed.

Adding wires

To add a wire between pins on a schematic sheet, simply left-click on the first pin, then mouse over to the next pin and left-click the second pin. PCB123 will interactively draw a wire net that

follows your mouse cursor. If you find that you prefer to route the net on a specific path, you can left-click on the schematic sheet to specify an interim location for the net. This function works much like digitizing a layout trace.

Wires can also be initiated and terminated anywhere along an existing wire. Doing so creates a connection to that wire, represented by a connector dot at that location (as shown at right).



Wires can be assigned properties. Wire properties can be accessed by placing the mouse cursor on the wire, then right-clicking to access the context menu, and selecting Properties...

Adding nomenclature

In the schematic, nomenclature is any text, unattached from a part, port or net, that has been added to the schematic for documentation purposes. You are free to use Text, Poly lines, Arcs, Circles and Polygons to add nomenclature to annotate your schematic. You can add these objects to your schematic by selecting Insert from the menu bar. You may also use the Sch Objects toolbar to access these tools.



This tool bar is located across the top of your screen and is shown here.



Adding Text – select the function Insert > Add Text. You will be presented with a dialog box into which you can type the text you require. Clicking OK attaches that text box to the mouse cursor and allows you to place the text where needed on your schematic sheet. Press the ESC key to exit text placement mode. Right click the text to access display properties to change such features as font, text size, color, etc.

Properties

For all objects that support properties, properties can be accessed by placing the mouse cursor on the object, then right-clicking to access the context menu, and selecting Properties...

A full discussion of properties can be found elsewhere in this manual. Please refer to "Properties", page 46.

Cut/copy/paste

The **Edit-Cut** command deletes the currently selected set of objects and places them into the paste buffer. There is only one paste buffer so only the last cut operation is available for paste.

The **Edit-Copy** command copies the currently selected set of objects into the paste buffer. There is only one paste buffer so only the last copy operation is available for paste.

The **Edit-Paste** command makes a copy of the objects in the paste buffer and inserts them into the currently active design.

First, any components in the paste buffer are added to the design by assigning them a new reference designator that does not conflict with one already in the design. Their alpha-prefix is retained.

Next, any complete routes or connections that start and end at a pins that are also in the paste buffer will be added to the design. They will retail their original net name with a unique numerical suffix.

Lastly, all text and non-net-attributed polygons will be copied without change. Net-attributed polygons will either inherit a cloned net name or retain their original net names depending on whether their original net names were cloned during the paste operation.

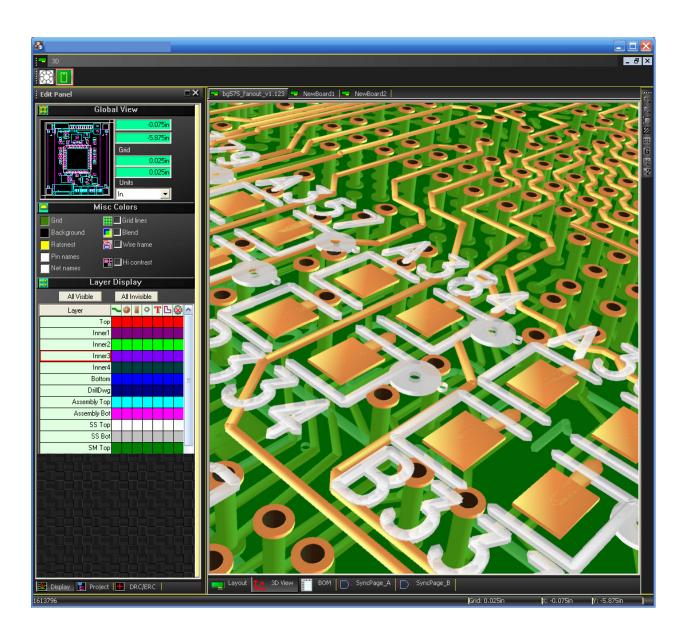
After all objects are created, they will be in a selected state attached to the cursor ready to be placed.

Moving parts

Depending on your experience, there may be a tendency to point at a component, hold down the LMB and drag that component. Though this is allowed, a much easier way is to point at the component and LMB click and release. This attaches the component to your cursor and allows you to do such things as use the RMB for context commands. You click once to select it and begin moving and click again to release it where you want.

Selected parts can be rotated by pressing the r key or mirrored by pressing h (horizontal mirror) or v (vertical mirror).

Part 3 - Layout User Guide

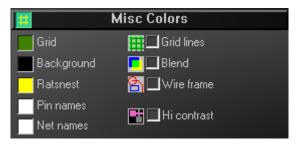




Layout Views and Panels

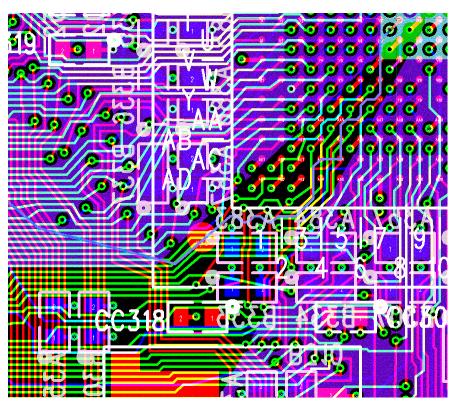
Display Panel

One of the interesting things that PCB123 technical support notices when processing orders is the incredible diversity of color schemes and display settings that different users prefer. Some schemes are quite creative and pleasing to the eye while others seem to offend the senses. The point is that what works for some people, does not always work for others. This becomes especially important on very



dense designs or designs that have a complex topology. These designs can lead to the subjective phenomenon of information overload. This can have a negative effect on productivity and can be a major contributor to mental fatigue. Beginners tend to be adversely affected more than experienced users but everyone has a different threshold of overload and fatigue and not everyone agrees on the best way to reduce it. It is for

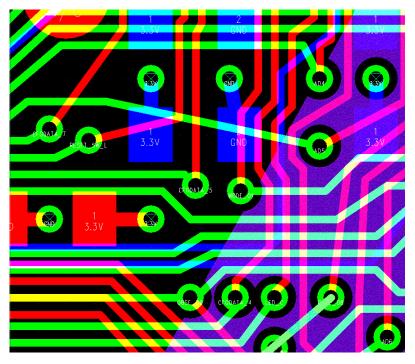
this reason that PCB123 employs a variety of global display settings.



Take a look at the design on the left.

This is a 6-layer design with everything visible, rendered in true width, and with color blending on. Even though factor the zoom is reasonable, the density of objects and the large angular fills make this screen difficult to look at. In this case, there is even confirming evidence of information saturation in that some features have turned white because so many objects with different colors occupy the same screen location.





This next picture is with the silkscreen layer set to invisible and the zoom factor has been increased to a greater magnification.

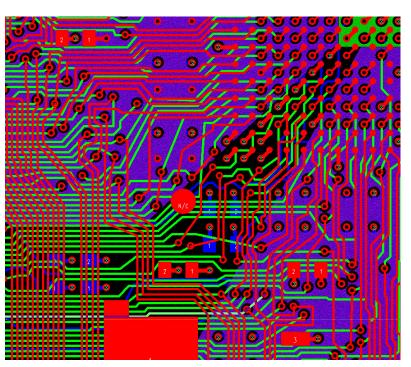
This does not hurt the eyes nearly as much but it is zoomed in so far that it is difficult to move anything without bumping into a window edge.

We will zoom back out to the original scale and try changing the display properties of the objects as opposed to the number of objects displayed.

The first thing we will try is turning off color blend.

As you can see, the data separation is much better but the opaque copper regions make it impossible to see the layers underneath. If we had to insert a via, we would be shooting blind and would have to keep changing layers to determine if the via would interfere with the obscured layers. Turning color blend off works best when there are no large fill areas.

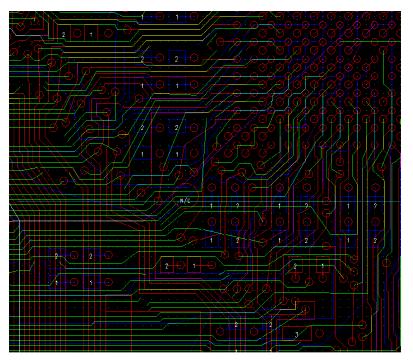
Next we will try changing the Wireframe setting.



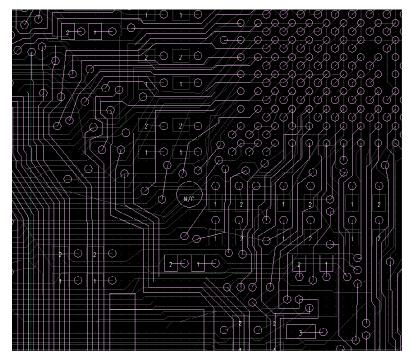
Wireframe does not fill any object

interiors. It simply displays either the outline or the center line of an object





Now this is probably a reasonable screen to look at while finding room to insert a via. It provides visibility and selectability to all layers.

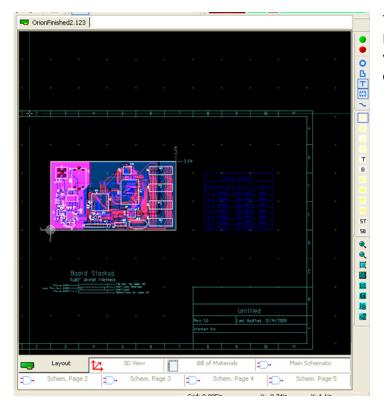


If we had to route an entire trace through the area we might try to use the Hi-Contrast mode in conjunction with Wireframe.

Hi-Contrast always displays the current layer in the contrast color and all other layers are displayed using the same dim color. This mode works great for cycling through layers looking for a path across the window.



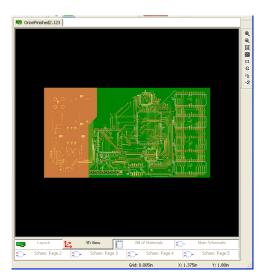
Design View



The Design view, also identified as the Layout view is (along with the schematic view) one of the most-accessed views during the board design process.

3D View

The 3D viewer is a photorealistic rendering system that displays the board in a perspective projection. The board can be viewed from any angle in 3D space.

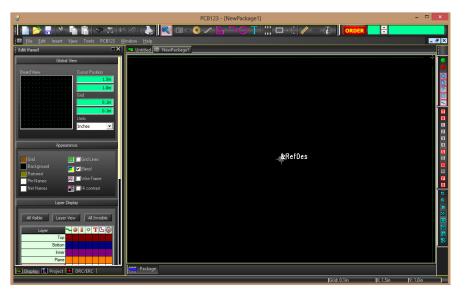




Footprint Editor

Designing a new footprint requires the use of the footprint editor. The footprint editor can be used as a stacked-interrupt edit function. In other words, as you're laying out your board, you may discover that

the part you wish to use is not yet represented with a footprint in your current libraries. By selecting Design -> New Footprint... you enter the footprint editor window. Note that your layout editor work is maintained in a edit pane underneath the footprint editor.



DRC Panel

The DRC/ERC tab contains a live listing of all the current design violations in the project.

The DRC will report on shorts, opens, and violations of manufacturing rules such as minimum spacing between objects of different nets, and pad size vs. drill size violations.

Locations of errors reported by the DRC are marked with a grey circle-? icon. By hovering the mouse pointer over the error, users can access a summary explanation for the cause of the error being reported.

The DRC/ERC tab also allows users to access violations by category or by layer. At the top of the DRC/ERC tab are the



'stepper' functions, allowing users to move from error to error so as to view/fix each one interactively.



Project Panel

The Project tab contains several report generators and a top-level navigator in the form of a tree that allows you to drill down into the schematic and layout data in minute detail. It also contains many top-level settings and defaults such as title block parameters that can be set for a project.

Statistics Report	Netlist Report	BOM Report				
Board Configuration						
Board ConFiguration □- , PCB Node □- , Schematic Node □ , Schematic Object Hierarchy						
Scho	ematic Properties	alue ▲				
Line Width	2					
Line Color						
Line Style	0					
Fill Color Start						
Fill Color End						
Fill Style	0					
Text Font	Tahoma					
Text Size	8					
Text Color						
Text Background C	olor					
Pin Name Size	8					
Company Name	Sunstone	Circuits 🚬				

The Statistics Report gives you a summary report on various board metrics for the currently active design, including: board area; routing layers; plane layers; number of components; pins per sq/inch; number of nets; etc.

The Netlist Report generates a (WHICH!!) format netlist to a file location of your choice. You can also opt to view the netlist output in a notepad window.

The BOM Report generates a text file bill of materials in the old-fashioned CAD system part-list format.

The Board Configuration button presents the board configuration wizard dialogs, comparable to the Design -> Board Configuration menu item.

In the Schematic Properties pane, you can edit/update the default settings for schematic sheet properties.

In the nested properties view, near the top of the Project tab, you can navigate down through attributes for virtually every design element in either the schematic or layout side. This includes symbols, footprints, nets, and their individual attributes and identifiers.

PCB Design Tasks

You can view this section as a recipe for creating a PCB. The tasks are listed in roughly chronological order to begin and complete a PCB design. It assumes you are starting the layout from a state listed in **Starting a New Design**. Some tasks may not apply to your design.

Create Missing Footprints	 Creating footprints from scratch Modify a library footprint Create a footprint from a component
Prepare Mechanical Features	 Adjusting the board outline Add mounting hardware Mechanical restrictions
Place Components	 Fixed component locations Autoplace components Manually placing components
Power/Ground Critical Routing	 Power/ground plane layers Routed power and ground Critical net routing
General Routing	 Fanout and autorouting Manual routing Routing techniques
Fills, and Nomenclature	 Active copper fill regions Nomenclature Silkscreens and soldermask
DRC and Visual Inspection	 Design Rule Checking Visual inspection Best practices
Engineering Changes	 Foreward annotating changes Backannotating changes Netlist comparison
Order Boards	 The order process What you will receive Other services

Create missing footprints

PCB123 supplies a library of footprints. Even so, it is inevitable that you will have to create a custom footprint or modify an existing one at some time. Footprints are created or modified in the Footprint Editor, which is very similar to the board editor but does not allow the net or route tools to be invoked.

Additionally, layers are treated generically. There is no concept of a specific layer number, only layer types such as Top, Inner, Plane. In this way, footprints are created board-agnostic. When a footprint is instantiated as a component, features in the footprint are mapped to the physical layers of the board based on the layer type. Some layers do not differentiate between top and bottom such as Silkscreen, Assembly, and Soldermask. This is because any feature placed on these layers will be mapped to the proper layer based on the side of the board any instantiating component is placed. This is a dynamic behavior. As you move the component between top and bottom (by using the Opposite command), the features on the above footprint layers appear on the correct board layers.

Very rarely will you create footprint features on the Plane or Soldermask layers. Any feature created on the Plane or Soldermask layers will result in copper or soldermask being voided, not added to those layers. These layers are traditionally treated as "negative" images. They are a continuous plane of material voided only where objects such as pads have been defined.

PCB123 does not have a traditional padstack object. A pad for a pin is defined simply with a size, shape, and drill. If the drill size is zero then the pad is a surface mount pad and will only appear on the top or bottom routing layer depending on which side of the board the component is placed. If the pin's drill size is not zero, then the pin is considered a thru-hole pin and a pad will appear on all layers. You are free from the burden of specifying plane layer and soldermask pad features. Plane-layer clearance pads are parametrically derived from the drill size and soldermask clearance pads are parametrically derived from the surface routing layer. This not only relieves you of the burden of defining the data but it allows Sunstone to optimize certain processes over time.

Footprints are defined in their own local coordinate system. When a component is placed on a board, its features will be relative to the origin of the footprint. It is recommended that a pin such as pin 1 should be placed at 0, 0 in the footprint. This helps to align component pins during component placement and makes life easier when routing. If you right-click on a pin in the Footprint Editor then one of the context commands is Use Pin as Origin. This will shift everything so that the pin is the new origin.

You can locate a pad at a specific coordinate by invoking the Pin Property dialog. There you can enter the specific X, Y coordinates for the pin using the full power of expressions. This can be quite useful when the mechanical specs locate pins relative to other pins.

If a mechanical drawing is referenced from the bottom view of a part, go ahead, create the footprint in the same way, and then from the main menu select Tools/Mirror All Geometry. This will flip everything back to a topside view, which is how a footprint should be defined.

114 •



When you need to create a custom footprint, you can create one from scratch, modify an existing footprint from a library, or create a footprint from a component on a board.

Creating footprints from scratch

With a document open, you can select Design > Create New Footprint from the menu. This will open an untitled Footprint Editor window whose only contents are a reference designator placeholder and the origin marker. When you are finished creating the footprint and you want to save it to a library you will have to name it and choose a library to save it in.

Modify and existing footprint from a library

If you can identify an existing footprint in a library that closely matches the footprint you need then it may be advantageous to start with the close match. Select Design > Edit Footprint and browse the library to select which footprint to edit. This will open a new Footprint Editor Window fully populated with the selected footprint. After making the edits you want, choose the File/Save Footprint As command. This will show the Save Footprint Dialog with all the original information retained such as the footprint name and the library it came from. It is important that you do not overwrite the original footprint; you must choose either another name or a different library to save the modified footprint into. If by accident you overwrite the original, undo all your changes to the footprint and save again. Then you can redo all the changes and save correctly this time.

Use an existing component as a starting point

If you have a component that is close to what you need or you just want to update one or more similar components on a design then you can point at a component in the Design View, right-click, and select Edit Footprint from the context menu. This will open a new Footprint Editor Window fully populated from the contents of the component. If, after making all changes, you want to save the footprint to a library then choose the File/Save Footprint As command. Whether you save the footprint to a library or not, closing the window will prompt you with the Update Components Dialog, which lets you decide how you want to apply the changes to the design that you started the edits with.

Prepare Mechanical Features

PCB123 now supports the ability to import common mechanical CAD file formats for use as the board outline. Find these importes on the TOOLS manu on the menu bar.

Adjusting the board outline

When you first create a new design, you acquire a board outline in one of five ways:



- use the default board outline in which case you have a 5" x 3" rectangle,
- specify some other rectangle,
- load a board template that already has a board outline,
- use a gutted previous design for the board outline.
- Import and IDF outline from your mechanical CAD tools via the PCB123 -> IDF Import/Export plugin.

In any event, you may need to adjust the board outline manually.

To move an entire board outline just left click on it and hold then drag, releasing the mouse button when you have positioned the board outline where you want.

Moving a board outline corner is simple: just point at a board outline corner, left-click, and release. Now you are moving a board outline corner. Just click again to release the corner where you want.

Mouse over a corner and press the d key to delete a corner of the board outline or any other polygon shape. Deleting a corner can also be accomplished with the mouse simply by selecting a corner and dropping it on the previous or next corner in the board outline. It is called corner reduction. It is very efficient, and can all be done with the mouse.

To insert a corner in a board outline simply click on the middle third of a segment or at least .050" away from a corner. You will then be in digitizing mode that allows you to add corners until you stop by pressing the Esc key, double clicking, or inserting another corner at the same location as the previous one.

Add mounting hardware

Mounting hardware can be in many forms, but usually it will use a drilled hole. Depending upon your specific needs, these holes can be either plated (PTH) or non-plated (NPTH).

The Maximum hole size available through the pcb123 service using the Add Pin tool is 0.257" diameter. If

you require a hole larger than 0.257", you can use the new **Create Cutout** tool



select to either draw a

circular or rectangular cutout.



To add a NPTH to your board, click on the add pin icon, The pin properties form will appear at the top of your display window. Enter the pin name, click on Non-Plated and select a size that will be appropriate for your application. Put the NPTH on its appropriate location.



Pin Proj	perties		
Pin Name			
Pin Net		_	
Pad Width			
Pad Height			
Hole Size	0.257in		N/C
Slot Length			
Non-Pl	ated 🔳 Therr	mal	
Tented	🔲 Slot		

To select, change, or move the hole after it is placed, you will need to make the 'DrillDwg' layer visible.

Set your select filter to pins:



Right mouse click over the NPTH and click on properties;

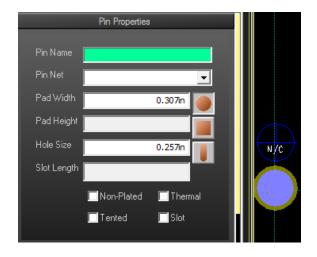
Context Commands				
Cancel	Esc			
-Cut /	Ctrl+X			
Сору	Ctrl+C			
Delete	Del			
Goto Schematic Symb	ol			
Disconnect pin from n	et			
Properties	Р			

Enter the change that you require in the form that pops up. The only options you will have are size and location. This is where you can fine-tune the placement without changing your grid.



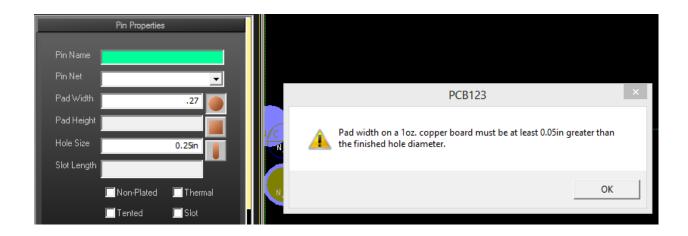
8 I	Pin \$101 properties	×
Pins		1
Pin Name MT0	1	
Net Name		-
Pin Geometry	Pin Location	
Pad Width Pad Height	X Coordinate -3. 1in Y Coordinate 2.8in	
Hole Size - Finis 0.257in Slot Length		ation
Von-plated	🗖 Themal 🔲 Tented	Slot
ОК	Cancel Apply	Help

Plated through holes (PTH) can be manipulated in much the same way, but they will have more features attached for you to define.





The PTH size will be offered with a default pad width. While you can make the pad size larger than the default, you will not be able to enter a size smaller than the default. Pad width should be large enough to provide a full width contact for any mounting hardware used. Be sure to use the maximum dimension shown on your hardware datasheet for this feature.



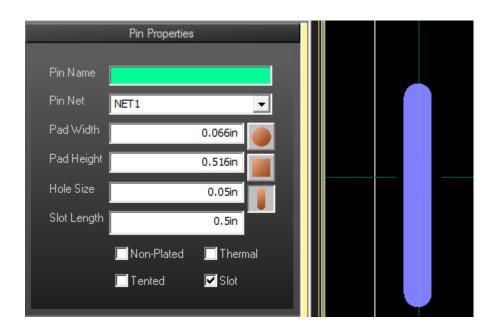
The **Tented** check box sets the solder mask property for a pin. Checking the tented box will cover (Tent) a through-hole pin or surface mount pad. Un-checking this option (the default setting) will create an opening in the solder mask for a through-hole pin or surface mount pad.

The **Thermal** check box determines if a through-hole pin or surface mount pad will connect to a filled copper region or plane layer with a thermal relief. Selecting the thermal check box will create a connection to polygon or plane with a thermal relief. Un-checking this box will allow a pin to directly connect to the polygon or plane.



The **Slot** check box is new to PCB123 v5. Checking this option will allow you to create plated an nonplated slots in your layout. Checking the **Slot** box enables the Slot Length field. Selecting a square or oval pad shape enables the Pad Height field. Set you slot properties and place the object.





Another new feature in V5 is the removal of the list of pre-defined finished hole sizes. In prior releases you were limited to a set of finished holes sizes. You can now enter in a specific hole size and we will build as designed. The smallest plated hole you can enter is .008" and the largest is .025". The smallest non-plated hole is .0135" and the largest is .257".

You can also set a specific hole size for slots. The smallest plated slot hole size is .025" and the largest is .25". The smallest non-plated slot hole size is .031" and the largest is .257".

Place components

If you did not start with a netlist then you are probably inserting components manually and placing them roughly where you think they should go as best you can without the aid of a netlist.

If you did start with a netlist then all the components are spread out beneath the board outline showing the ratsnest of connections to be routed.

Fixed component locations

The most logical way to begin placing the board is to identify all the components with fixed locations and place them first. You can right-click on a component to display its properties and from there enter the precise location for that component. Even if the locations are not precisely fixed starting you placement with the I/O circuitry is usually a smart strategy.

Before you start placing the bulk of the components, you should select a reasonable placement grid for the components. The larger the grid the easier it is to align and uniformly distribute components. On very



dense boards, it may become impossible to place every device on the same grid. Having the bulk of the pins on a uniform grid can pay big dividends while routing.

After placing fixed, I/O, or generally critical components there are a couple of strategies to employ for placing the remainder of the components:

- If you have the schematic handy then you can press Ctrl+F to find and select other components and snap them to the cursor for placement.
- If you started with a netlist, you can also use the resulting ratsnest as a placement guide. By roughly placing the devices with the larger pin counts, you try to minimize the overall connection length by placing components that heavily interconnected close together.

These are just some rough guidelines. You design may have some restrictions such as critical nets that dictate a less-than-optimal placement for overall routing, or there may be height restrictions on some devices.

Autoplace components

To get a quick start on the layout process, you may choose to use the menu item, Design -> AutoPlace. Using this function, PCB123 will make its best effort to pre-arrange component footprints in a way to minimize the amount of routing required.

Smart Auto-placement is a complex algorithm that often relies heavily on heuristics and 'best practices.' The Auto-Place function in PCB123, while useful, is not intended to be a full-blown autoplacer in the spirit of some other enterprise-level tools.

PCB123 provides an Autoplacer function as well. While you create the schematic for your design, PCB123 tracks both the schematic symbol in the schematic sheet, and the associated footprint for that schematic symbol. As you place symbols, the footprints and rats-nest connection data are queuing up on the layout view, ready for placement and routing.

Auto placement is a good tool for getting all of the component footprints on the screen. After that, they will all probably still need to be moved into a more appropriate location. The auto-placement feature has no practical idea what each component's relation to the other components on the board might be. For example, if your decoupling capacitors are all lined up on page three of your schematic, with ICs on page 1 and 2, your decoupling capacitors will all place in a little patch of real estate independent of any relationship they may have in the real world.

The autoplacer can be used iteratively as you work through the initial placements on your board. Use the LOCK setting on the component properties pane to lock down a component and keep the autoplacer from relocating it.

Manual place components



Pragmatically speaking, whether you've used AutoPlace or not, you'll probably want to do some amount of manual placement of components.

If the component footprints are already placed on your layout view, you can manually adjust the component placement. Click on the selection tool. In selection mode, hover the mouse pointer over a component until the mouse cursor turns into a chip package icon. Then left-click the component to enter move mode. The component will ghost interactively on the screen; place the component in its new location. Ratsnest data will follow; previously routed connections will ratsnest from any broken connections to the component in its new location.

Power, ground, and critical routing

Power and ground plane layers

In this section, we'll show you how to add a Plane to the routing layer, and name the plane `+12v'

In this case we have selected a trace on the +12V net. Clicking on the Unroute Net menu item will remove+12V trace routing from all layers



Set the edit layer to layer Bottom, using the edit pane on the left side of PCB123.

Layer	~	0	٥	Т	ቤ	8
Тор						
Inner1	×					
Inner2	X					
Bottom						
DrillDwg						



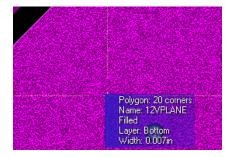
Click on the add board outline icon, draw a board outline around the board to cover the area under all +12V pins from any layer. It helps to check bottom layer routing and adjust any traces that will cut across the plane.



Context Commands				
Cancel	Esc			
Cut a constant	Ctrl+X			
Сору	Ctrl+C			
Paste	Ctrl+V			
Delete	Del			
Delete Corner	• D • • •			
Layer	L			
Width	• W • • • •			
Rotate	$\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{R}$			
Rip Horizontal				
Rip Vertical				
Toggle Filled/Unfilled				
Convert Corner to Arc	A			
Save Selection				
Properties	Ρ			

The plane you draw will be just an outline with default line width. Right mouse over the new board outline you drew and select Toggle Filled/Unfilled.

This is your filled board outline. It is named 12VPLANE, but not attached to a net yet.

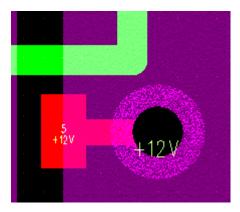


Right mouse over the plane area again, select the net name (+12V) and ok the form.

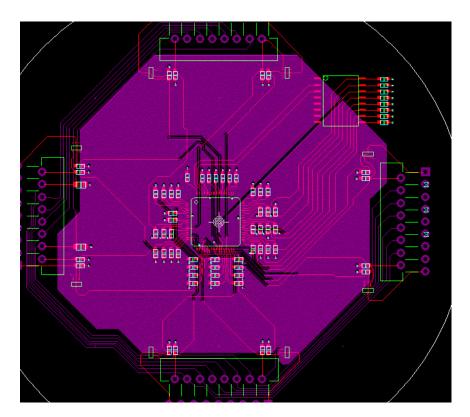


🔗 Poly	12VPLAN	E properties			×
Polygor	ns				
Name	12VPLA	NE			
	·				
Layer	Bottom			•	
Net	(NONE)			•	
	(NONE)			_	
	47\220			-	
	W	/idth			
	Ж	Cancel	Appl	8	Help

Now, Route all +12V pins out to a breakout via to finish your connections.







Reroute your pre-existing traces, and cleanup.

If your board has a large number of power and ground pins, if it will be drawing a high current, or if there are high speed signals, you will want to add plane layers to your board.

Sometimes you will need both power and ground, others just ground layers will be sufficient, with routed power.

To define an internal layer as a power or ground layer has been simplified as compared to many other cad programs you may have seen:

Open your pcb123 layout window.

Click on Design, Board Configuration.

Select Four or Six layer Board, this will also free up the 'Use Inner as plane layer buttons.

Select	the	layers	you	want	to	make	into	plane	layers.
Layers Req	uired ——		_ Powe	r Planes ——					
O Two	Layer Board	Ы		Use Inner 1 as	; a plane laj	yer			
Eour	Layer Board	н		Jse Inner 2 as	; a plane laj	yer			
	-			Use Inner 3 as	: a plane laj	yer			
SIX L	ayer Board.			Jse Inner 4 as	: a plane laj	yer			



Or,

Layers Required	- Power Planes
Layers riequired	
Two Layer Board	Use Inner 1 as a plane layer
	🔲 Use Inner 2 as a plane layer
C Four Layer Board	
	🔲 Use Inner 3 as a plane layer
Six Layer Board	🔽 Use Inner 4 as a plane layer

Click the Ok button.

Typically you will want to alternate signal and plane layers, keeping each signal layer adjacent to a plane layer. The pictures above show a typical setup for a 4 or 6 layer board.

Place your cursor over a ratsnest/guide for your power or ground net to be assigned a plane layer, press the right mouse button, select properties.

Context Commands				
Cancel	Esc			
Layer	4			
Unroute Segment	U			
Unroute Track	Del			
Unroute Net				
Segment Width	W			
Track Width				
Net Width				
Autoroute	A			
Properties	Р			

In the Net xxx properties menu, (my net is called "sink") select the plane or planes that will connect to your net.



👸 Net sink j	properties	X
Nets Tra	cks	
Net Name	SINK	
Width	0.007in Spacing 0.006in	
Via size	0.025in Drill size 0.014in 💌	
	Net Color (using default color)	
✓Inner1(o plane layers Routing priority No nets assigned) 0 Low Avg	
	Do not optimize Do not autoroute	
ОК	Cancel <u>Apply</u>	Help

The only thing left to make your power/ground connections will be routing from surface mount pins to a via for connectivity.

For power or ground that will be attached to a plane layer, I would not want to auto-route the net, since doing so would add a huge amount of clutter to the signal routing layers. You may want to use the auto-router to perform breakout, but after that, turn off auto-routing for your power/ground nets.

Routed power and ground

As your boards become more complex, you will have more than just one or two power nets. When this happens, you may need to manually route some of them.

You will still not want to auto-route power or ground due to the amount of clutter that this can create.

Power should be routed before your other circuitry in order to ensure that you leave enough room to get the job done. Power traces are typically wider than signal traces, and usually need extra spacing to keep from negatively affecting your more sensitive signals.

Power and ground nets usually make use of discrete components such as caps, resistors, inductors, etc... These parts can have specific placement and routing constraints that will not be possible if you have already routed the rest of your nets.

Some things that need to be taken into account before you start routing your power are;



- Current present on the net. (how wide do the traces need to be?)
- Voltage, difference between the net and other nets on the board. (how far apart do your nets need to be for safety reasons)
- Space required from sensitive nets, amount of 'noise' on the net will have to be considered. (do some nets need to be farther from your power nets to work?)
- Decoupling, bypass, and bulk capacitors will need to be carefully placed and routed prior to power net routing.
- Make a plan, it's sometimes best to do it on paper with colored pens to make sure you can make your connections before spending a bunch of time in cad just to find out that you need to rip everything up and spread your parts out for more room.

Critical routing

Some nets may have special needs such as a minimal routing length or routed in a particular sequence from pin to pin. Often it is easier to deal with these nets at the beginning then later on in the design when things may get dense.

Clock nets should be routed first and very carefully planned out. These nets control pretty much everything else that happens on your board, and if clocks are not properly connected and protected, nothing else will really work as well as you hope.

Any nets with a specific timing requirement should be routed next. Nets such as usb, data and address lines, etc... should be carefully scrutinized for length, spacing, and impedance requirements prior to making the actual connections on your board.

Some nets will require "differential pair" routing, two nets running carefully side by side for the entire distance that they travel across your board.

Once routed, these "critical routing" traces should be left alone and only moved if there is no other option.

General routing

General nets are any nets that don't have special routing or other requirements.

All you really need to do is connect them from one pin to another.

These nets will be hooked up after all of your power, ground, and critical nets are complete.

You will still want to make use of a neat and tidy routing plan for these non-critical nets or you will quickly run out of room. While the temptation to auto-route them is always present, your board will look better and almost always perform better if you manually route them.



Routing should follow some rules in order to make the most efficient use of the board area you have;

- Route orthogonally where possible. Each layer is set up to route one direction, either horizontally or vertically.
- Use 45" chamfered corners when routing. This makes for shorter overall routing, fewer roadblocks, and will reduce unwanted reflections on your signals.
- Route straight out of component pins a distance equal to the width of the trace before changing direction. This will remove acute angle features resulting in 'acid traps' at board fabrication. Acid traps are sharp corners that can be hard to clean during etching processes. They can result in long term reliability problems on your finished product.
- Don't run these types of traces right next to your critical routing nets, they can cause crosstalk or timing problems on your critical nets.

Fanout and autorouting

If your board has a considerable percentage of surface-mounted devices then you may want to perform a Fanout on your design, especially if your board is dense or has more than two routing layers. The idea behind this is that you have to route out of the SMD pads on the layer they are on so you may as well make sure you can at least escape the pad to an immediate via. Once this is done, you have the option of routing the remainder of the connection on any suitable layer. Besides automatically fanning out a board you can do it manually by routing out of a pad and then pressing the 'V' key to terminate the route at a via. You can always remove unneeded vias after the board is complete.

On dense boards, running the autorouter can be beneficial in determining trouble spots on the board. The autorouter settings can be modified in the User Preferences Dialog. You can always undo the results of an autoroute. Autorouting may be an acceptable solution on sparsely to moderately dense designs or designs that have very good connection 'flow' to them.

Using the automatic fanout feature can radically decrease the amount of time spent just breaking out your signals from surface mount components.

The automatic fanout tool is preset to use your routing grid for via placement. It will place vias in locations that may not be perfect for your application. On one test (shown below) components were placed top and bottom of the board. Via fanout was run and vias were placed in locations that short two nets together. These vias or components will need to be moved prior to any other routing activity.





Via placement shown below resulting from automatic via fanout. The vias on sd_wp net are not necessary, traces should be routed directly from pin to pin for this net. Vias can easily be removed from these locations.



After running automatic fanout, and before running the autorouter, you will want to clean up any undesirable fanout vias, perform any power net, and critical routing, make sure your routing grid is set to a number that makes sense for your circuit, turn off fanout before autorouting, setup layer bias and direction, and hit the go button.

User Preferences		x
General Display Layer Colors	Routing and Spacing Rules Board Info	
Global mimimum spacing All Layers 5mil	Autorouter rules Routing grid 25mil Via bias Neutral 💌	 Fanout before autorouting Gloss after autorouting Autoroute using 45's
Per-layer mimimum spacing	Autorouter layer bias	Autorouter layer direction
Top layer 5mil	Top layer Neutral	Top layer Horizont
Inner layer 1 5mil	Inner layer 1 Neutral 💌	Inner layer 1 Vertical 💌
Inner layer 2 5mil	Inner layer 2 Neutral	Inner layer 2 Horizont
Inner layer 3 5mil	Inner layer 3 Neutral 💌	Inner layer 3 Vertical 💌
Inner layer 4 5mil	Inner layer 4 Neutral	Inner layer 4 Horizont
Bottom layer 5mil	Bottom layer Neutral 💌	Bottom layer Vertical 💌

It makes sense to limit the number of layers that you use for autorouting. Doing so will limit the number of layer transitions that your signals make before they reach their destination. You can also limit the number of vias using the via bias option. The options are Use freely, neutral, avoid using, and no vias. Just remember, less is better in most cases.

After your autorouting run is complete, you should do some cleanup. One of the things that needs to be done is management of your signal return path.

Signal return path is the route that your signal will find along the path of lowest impedance, hopefully directly under the actual signal trace as routed on the board.

To help visualize this, think of your house wiring. There is a black wire and a white wire. (we won't worry about the safety ground, bare wire right now).

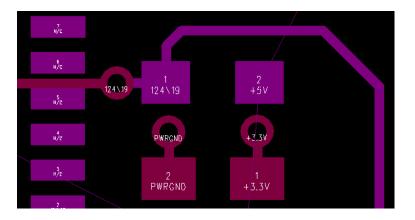
The black wire can be considered the signal wire. The white wire provides the signal return. They are spaced very carefully in their cable assembly to provide a controlled and reasonably low impedance signal return. If you simply ran a wire from the breaker out to all of the appliances on the net, and looped it back to the breaker box ground rail, the lights would come on but the tv and radio would suffer from



uncontrolled static. On your circuit board this is called 'noise'. It can usually be controlled by taking a few fairly simple steps that I will try to describe for you.

For the circuit below, we have outer signal layers, and inner plane layers. The plane layers are named PWRGND and +3.3V in this area of the board.

Net 124/19 is routed such that it requires a via to transition from top to bottom layer at pin 1 of the pullup resistor shown. In order to provide a good signal return path, you would place a bypass capacitor as shown with a via to each of the reference planes. This will be necessary each location that the net changes from top to bottom layer.



For places where the routing layer changes and there are two ground layers, using a via to tie the ground layers together near your signal via will provide the same service as the bypass capacitor between PWRGND and +3.3V shown above.

Depending on the signal rise time, power, and timing requirements, along with a huge array of other considerations, one bypass capacitor/ return via may suffice for a number of signals in an area, or you may want one to one coverage.

Manual routing

Using the Freestyle tool you can freely insert routes from pins and other routes. You can even define new connectivity this way. There is no auto-finish because there is no end-point defined. The route is terminated by pressing the escape key (leaving a dangling end) or by routing to another pin or route.

In order to make the most efficient use of real estate on your boards, you can manually route all of the signals. This is the preferred method for boards that will be visible to the end user for a lot of reasons. Manually placed and routed boards, when done carefully, just look better than the most carefully autorouted boards. Manually routed boards will also have less vias, can require less layers, and will usually perform better in the field.

131 •

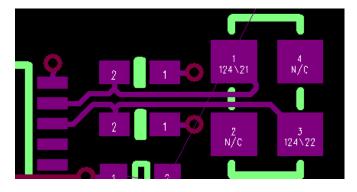


In order to manually route your signals, you will want to make sure that you follow the order of routing precedence described above. Route your power according to specific current and voltage rules to provide a safe and robust power delivery system.

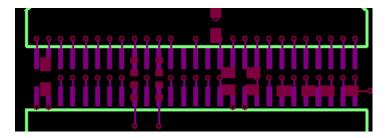
Route clocks and other high speed nets to meet the requirements outlined in their specifications.

Connect all of your other general routing nets to complete your board.

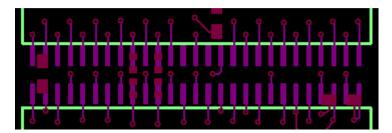
Below is a crystal routed with it's decoupling capacitors. Routing should be as short as possible, nets should be routed together as a differential pair, and the wire length should be matched as closely as practical. Again, this should not be a problem because you can make any adjustments now, before other routing clutters up your board.



The automatic fanout of the pins on these memory chips will result in very crowded trace routing, and area fill splits between the vias. Moving the vias to a staggered pattern will relieve these problem areas.



Something like this will provide much more routing space for the signals running between these memory parts.





Routing techniques

Routing should be orthogonal with mitered corners in order to make efficient use of your board area.

Routing with random angle traces will be very hard to maintain and will take much more space since traces can't be routed parallel to each other.

Mitered corners are important for reduction of signal reflection which causes noise and timing problems. Mitered corners also reduce the amount of area that your traces use on the board

When manually routing a net connecting two pins that are not located on your routing grid; start routing from one pin, route most of the trace but stop before you make the last connection, hit the esc. Button on your keyboard to stop routing, move your cursor to the unrouted pin, click on it to start routing, finish routing the wire to provide neat pad entry and on-grid trace routing.

Fills, and Nomenclature

Active copper fill regions

In order to have more than one power or ground net represented on a single layer, you will frequently add a copper fill for each of your power/ground nets.

To reduce the likelihood of errors in your connectivity, you will need to attach each power fill region to a specific net name.

In the example below, we will add a power plane to +12V.

If the net is already routed, you will want to unroute all of the traces on that net.

Center mouse over trace on net to be removed. In this case we have selected a trace on the +12V net. Clicking on the Unroute Net menu item will remove+12V trace routing from all layers



You will have ratsnest guides showing for the power net now, making it more obvious where all of the connections need to be made.

Set your edit layer to your intended power or ground layer In this case, it will be layer 'Bottom'.

Layer	~	0	٥	Т	Gø
Тор					
Inner1	X				
Inner2	X				
Bottom					
DrillDwg					



Click on the add board outline icon, draw a board outline around the board to cover the area under all +12V pins from any layer. It helps to check bottom layer routing and adjust any traces that will cut across the plane.

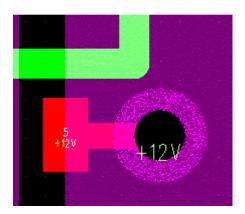


The poly properties menu will open above the display window, simply enter the information that you need to define your plane and start drawing it on the board.

Poly Properties
Polygon Type
Simple Polyline
Filled Polygon
Line Width Layer
0.007in Bottom 💌
Polygon Name
12V PLANE
Polygon Net
(none)
(none)
47\220
47\222 Bc 47\224 ▼ bition

Your area fill will attach to any items that are connected to +12V and pass through or reside on layer 'bottom'.

Route all +12V pins out to a breakout via to finish your connections.



Gerber output will automatically be generated with thermal relief patterns for all pins and vias.



Nomenclature

Nomenclature, or silkscreen is printed on your board using a non-conductive epoxy, usually in a contrasting color from silkscreen layers. If your board will have visible nomenclature such as reference designators, part number, revision, etc... you will need to adjust it's placement and sometimes it's size.

Text size needs to be large enough for us to print legibly, but not so large that it can't be placed neatly on your board.

A reasonable size for nomenclature is 0.050" tall characters, 0.006" – 0.008" line width.

0.006" is the minimum line width that we can print with a guarantee that it will be complete and legible.

To edit information text such as company information or board part number, click on the add text button at the top of your edit window.



Enter your required text using the keyboard, or you can copy and paste from another document for quicker more accurate entry.

Add Text		? ×
Use Ctrl+Enter for	multiple lines	
1		<u> </u>
OK	Cancel	Help

To edit text size, orientation, line width, layer, etc... after text entry, right mouse click on Properties,



Make any changes to the form that you feel would improve the look and legibility of your text items and click on ok..

136 •



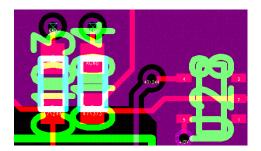
Text M-F 1.800.228.8198After hours or weekends	x
Text Text M-F 1.800.228.8198After hours or weeken	ds5
Enter string (Use Ctrl+Enter for multi-line)	Τ
M-F 1.800.228.8198 After hours or weekends 503.929.5672	
Layer	
SS Top	
Text Height Line Width	
0.075in 0.008in	
X Coord 0.635in Y Coord 0.000°	
-0.96in Mirrored	
OK Cancel Apply Help	

The same changes can be done to component name, reference designators shown in the popup menu below.

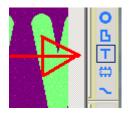
🖑 Text &RefDes properties	X
Text	
Enter string (Use Ctrl+Enter for multi-line)	
Change comp name	
Layer	
SS Top	
Text Height Line Width	
0.075in 0.008in	
X Coord 0.041496in Y Coord X Coord	
0.295in Mirrored	
OK Cancel Apply H	lelp

After your text has the size and thickness that you like to see, you may have to move it to a more likely location.



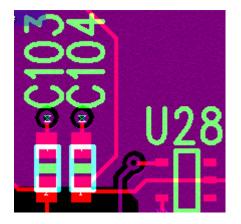


Set your select filter to text using the icon shown below.



Put your cursor over a text item that needs to move, right mouse to select and simply drag the text to it's new location

While the text is selected, push the letter R (upper or lower case is fine) and the text will rotate 90degrees (U28 had to be rotated 270 degrees so "RRR" did the trick.





Order Boards

PCB123 is unique in that the tool tracks your design against a fully documented set of manufacturing process parameters. In fact, because of the close connection between the tool and manufacturing capabilities at Sunstone Circuits, PCB123 can even provide real-time quoting for board fabrication as you design.

The in-tool quote-and-order functionality provides you with two key benefits:

- 1. You can design to your fabrication budget, and get immediate notification if a design change affects your pricing.
- 2. Thanks to the web interface ordering process, you can efficiently submit your design to Sunstone for manufacture, with a clear understanding of the manufacturability (thanks to DRCs) and pricing for your order.

The order process itself is quite easy On the following pages, we'll walk you through the ordering process.

The Order process

1. Pre-Order DRC check

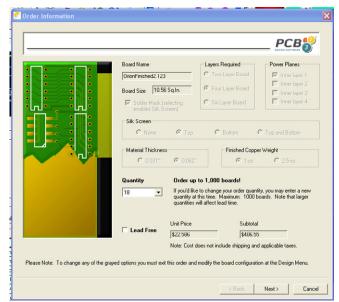
ч	lies.	
I	PCB123	X
	?	There are 4 errors and 80 warnings still being reported. IF you choose ignore these errors/warnings and place the order as is, PCB123 does not assume any liability for the finished product. Do you wish to proceed?

2. Sunstone Account Log-in

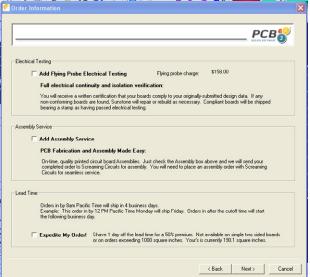
🖉 Login to Su	nstone.com	
F	njohnson@sunstone.com	_
Email Address:	njonnson@sunscone.com	
Password:	*****	
	$\overleftarrow{\mathbf{v}}$ Remember me on this computer	
	OK Cancel	



3. Board Configuration Review Page. You can review the settings used for the board being ordered. On this page, at this point in the process, you can modify the board quantity, and the ROHS manufacturing options. Any other configuration options will require quitting the order process and accessing the board configuration inside the editor environment.



- 4. Add On Services Page. Additional services can be selected here. As of this printing, PCB123 provides the following cost-adder services:
 - Flying Probe Electrical Testing
 - Assembly services (via a partner company)
 - Expedited manufacturing



5. File Transfer. Click the transfer button on this page, and your PCB123 design file will be transferred via your internet connection to Sunstone Circuits. Along with the design file we will receive the board configuration and basic manufacturing parameters you specified in step 2. Please note, your order is not yet complete. But, the only remaining steps are the payment details.



Place Order	
	Board Upload
	OrionFinished2.123
Re la	Transfer to Sunstone Circuits After clicking the Transfer' button below, your order and PCB design file will be uploaded to Sunstone Circuits. When the upload completes your web browser will be opened to Sunstone com which will be ready to complete your order.

6. Order Summary. After the transfer is complete, order control transfers to a web browser page similar to the example below. Here you can either enter credit card or billing information or, if you have credit card information already on file in your Sunstone account, you can choose the pre-loaded information. This page confirms the cost-adder services you may have selected, and also shows you the estimated ship date. Please be aware that, for some payment options like Phone/FAX, your order will not be released manufacturing to until payment information is received by Sunstone Circuits. As such, the ship

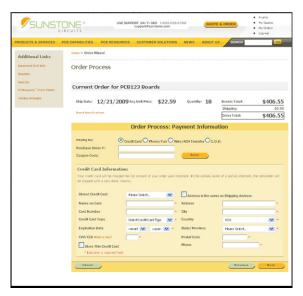
date is an estimate until payment is confirmed.

Click next on this page, and you proceed to order confirmation

7. Order Confirmation: Final confirmation of the order, services, ship date, options, etc. At this point, all payment and manufacturing information is complete. Clicking the SUBMIT ORDER button places the order and initiates the process to charge the credit card account.

Additional Long Amage of the Water Market	OUCTS & SERVICES	PCB CAPABILITIES PCB RESO	URCES CUSTOMER SOLUTION	S NEWS ABOUT US	SEARCH	
set of a read of a	dditional Links	Home > Order Wizard				
Autor Process						
<text><text><text><text><text><text><text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text>	portant Drill Info	Order Process				
<text></text>	pedite					
Ware Ware Ware Ware Ware Ware Ware Ware	er lade	Comment Onder for	DOD102 Decede			Brief from the section
Bartis III, 217,2009 ang unit Registration of the second secon	Nexpress [®] Price Tables	current order for	PUBIZ3 BOards			
<text> material material material between gates control control</text>	liday Schodule	Shin Date: 12/21/2	000 Ave link Price: \$22.50	Quantite: 19	Boards Total:	\$406.55
between between		12/21/2	.009 ···· , •···· · ··· · · · · · · · · · ·			\$100.00
Determine Determin		Board Specifications				
new new new new					orber roun.	\$400.55
<text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text><text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text></text>			Order Process: Re	view and Submit O	rder	
Bitling forwardsom No Experientist: No Bitling forwardsom No Experientist: No Thom startsom No Experientist: No Thom startsom No Experientist: No Thom startsom No No No Name startsom No No No		Once you have confirm Upon submission you w Chosen Specification Quantity:	ed that all information is correct, click ill recieve a confirmation email. \$ 18	Build Time:		
Assertion No Expedite No Billing in fording any any work of this using passes first Ass work one. Mass Areas Mass Areas This couplede para anywork of this using passes first Ass work one. Mass Areas Mass Areas Packade Option: Area Mass Areas Packade Option: Area UK (2014) 2490 Payment UK (2014) 2490 Mass Areas		Once you have confirms Upp submission you w Chosen Specification Quantity: Part Number: Revision: Layens: Board Size:	ed that all information is correct, click II recieve a confirmation email. 5 18 OrionFinished2.123 1.0 4 4.4000 X 2.4000 inches	Build Time: Solder Mask: Silkscreen: Plate Finish:	2 Side - Green 1 Side (Top) - Tin Lead	
Dilling Information Mater Mater Mater To complet your private in our der prime fill out aus warden. Name Arrows Name Arrows Privates Order: Billing Schemation Name Arrows Privates Order: Billing Schemation Name Arrows Privates Order: Billing Schemation Name Arrows Privates: Billing Schemation Name Arrows Privates: Billing Schemation Name Arrows		Orce you have confirm Loon submission you w Chosen Specification Quantity: Purt Number: Revision: Layens: Board Stee: subscreen Cipping:	ed that all information is correct, click II recieve a confirmation email. 5 18 OrionFinished2.123 1.0 4 4.4000 X 2.4000 inches	Build Time: Solder Mask: Silkscreen: Plate Finish:	2 Side - Green 1 Side (Top) - Tin Lead	
This compared a non-periode and the source of the Law Name Jersen Presention Present Terms and Content to its for compare parts for Present Terms and Terms (Content to its Strategies) parts and the source of the source of the source of the source of the Dial Strategies Content to the Strategies of the Strategies of the Present Strategies Content to the Strategies of the Strategies of the Strategies of the source of the Strategies of the Strategies of the Strategies of the Strategies of the Str		One you have confirms Upen submission you we Chosen Specification Quantity: Part Number: Revision: Layens: Board Size: Board Size	ed bes all information is correct, clock ill receive a confirmation email. 6 B Onorffinished:223 10 4 4-0000 X 24000 inches 765	Build Time: Solder Mask: Silkscreen: Plate Finish: Routing: Gerber File Convension:	2 Side - Green 1 Side (Top) - Tin Lead Individual No	
Prover free vired. General law is is complete USCS Freeman Root Marka, OR 1990 Parchase Orden: daw of King Stramma Parchase Orden: daw of King Stramma Parcente: proverting (PhromoSuntamer.com Stelp Hetholt: USS General		One you have confirme One you have confirme One submission you we Chosen Specification QuantRy: Purt Number: Revision: Layore: Board Stee: answcreen cupping: Chosen Services Electrical Fost: AusemNy:	ef bes all information is correct, click ill recieve a confirmation email.	Build Time: Solder Mask: Silkscreen: Plute Fielde Routling: Gorber File Conversion: Expectine:	2 Side - Green 1 Side (Top) - Tin Lead Individual No No	
var oder. 100.5 Freesine Rod Handler, d. 100.5 Freesine Rod Handler, d. 100.4 Freesine Rod Payment: University of the State State Payment: State		One you have confirme One you have confirme One submission you we Chosen Specification QuantRy: Purt Number: Revision: Layore: Board Stee: answcreen cupping: Chosen Services Electrical Fost: AusemNy:	ef bes all information is correct, click ill recieve a confirmation email.	Duild Time: Solder Hask: Silkseren: Pluta Fielde Routling: Gerber File Convenion: Expecifie: Shipping Information	2 Side - Green 1 Side (Top) - Tin Lead Individual No No	
Nutice Order: Nutice Of Sec. Sec. Sec. Sec. Sec. Sec. Sec. Sec.		Orar you have confirme Urns buildings Urns buildings Orar buildings	d that all reformation is correct, clock income a confirmation email.	Duild Time: Solder Mask: Silkoreen Plute Fielde Routing: Gerter File Conversion: Expecilie: Shan Järson	2 Side - Green 1 Side (Top) - Tin Lead Individual No No	
Prymoti: Rompfar (Primanipunationscom) Ship Histori: UPS Grand		Orany sur, have confirme Una sur, have confirme Chosen Specification Quantity: Park Number: Revision: Layne: Sandord Statist Sand	d that all reformation is correct, clock income a confirmation email.	Duild Time: Solder Hask: Silkorene: Plata Fielde Routling: Gerber File Convension: Expecifie: Shipping Information Nan Jamon Sontone Croats	2 Side - Green 1 Side (Top) - Tin Lead Individual No No	
Ship Hethod: UPS Ground		Orany such and configuration Orany such and configuration Quantity: Part Numbers: Revision: Layon: Band Siles: Dand Siles:	d the all references in correct, clock mode a confination enail.	Build Time: Solder Made Silkozene: Plate Fielde Routing: Gerber File Convenion: Experie: Solipping Information Vision Jamon Sontime Cross 12005 Freemen Rood Marin, OR 1992	2 Side - Green 1 Side (Top) - Tin Lead Individual No No	
		Orany purchase ordering Orany purchases of purchases Orange of the order of the ord	of the all references on correct, close	Build Time: Solider Maak: Silkooreen: Plate Fielde: Routling: Gender File Convention: Expectite: Shapping Enformation Nation Jones Francisco Sontione Creates Solido Francisco	2 Side - Green 1 Side (Top) - Tin Lead Individual No No	
Est Shie Date: 12/21/2009		Orany purchase ordering Orany purchases of purchases Orange of the order of the ord	of the all references on correct, close	Build Time: Solider Maak: Silkooreen: Plate Fielde: Routling: Gender File Convention: Expectite: Shapping Enformation Nation Jones Francisco Sontione Creates Solido Francisco	2 Side - Green 1 Side (Top) - Tin Lead Individual No No	
		Orany sup Alese confirme Uns subsections Choses Specification Constant Cons	of the all references on correct, close	build Time: Solide Taka: Solide Taka: Reading: Reading: Shipping Information Science Tak Convension Science Crusis Science Cru	2 Sde - Green 1 Sde (Top) - Trn Laad Indvidaal No No Modify	White





And that completes the order process. Your order appears in the PCB123 order queue at Sunstone Circuits and immediately moves onto the manufacturing floor for tooling, imaging and manufacture.

You can check on the status of your order (including where it is in manufacturing) at any time by logging into your account at <u>www.sunstone.com</u>.



Routing your Design

Before you route

After you have all the components placed on the board, you may need to setup special rules for some nets. These include:

- **Plane Layer Nets:** If you have plane layers, you will need to establish which nets are tied to the planes. You can navigate to the nets in the Object Hierarchy or graphically select the nets and use RMB Properties to get to the Net Properties Dialog. Assuming you have already identified at least one inner layer as a plane layer you can click on the plane layer checkboxes in the net properties dialog. This tells the system that as soon as a pin connects to a plane layer either because it is a thru-hole pin, it is routed to another thru-hole pin or via, then it is considered connected. If you have multiple nets assigned to the same plane layer you will have to isolate the pins from each net by adding a polyline that encompasses just the pins of one of the plane nets. This has to be done manually.
- **Special Net Widths:** Depending on the copper weight of the board, the default width of nets will be either .007" or .012". This may not be adequate for certain nets, especially those that may be carrying higher current. You can set the line width for these nets in Net Properties Dialog.
- **Special Net Spacing:** Depending on the copper weight of the board, the default spacing for nets will be either .007" or .012". This may not be adequate for certain nets, especially those that may be carrying a high potential and need to meet regulatory requirements or nets that are edge sensitive and need to ensure minimal coupling. You can set the net spacing in the Net Properties Dialog.

You can also set Per-Layer spacing rules in the User Preferences Dialog.

Routing the board

After you have all the components placed on the board, your next task is to route all the nets. There are many factors to consider and there are many tools to help. Generally, you want each layer to have a preferred routing direction or 'flow'. Too much meandering on a layer most likely will cut off routing channels before all the routing is complete.

As for a routing strategy, here is a sequence to consider:

1. **Fanout:** If your board has a considerable percentage of surface-mounted devices then you may want to perform a Fanout on your design, especially if your board is dense or has more than two



routing layers. The idea behind this is that you have to route out of the SMD pads on the layer they are on so you may as well make sure you can at least escape the pad to an immediate via. Once this is done, you have the option of routing the remainder of the connection on any suitable layer. Besides automatically fanning out a board you can do it manually by routing out of a pad and then pressing the 'V' key to terminate the route at a via. You can always remove unneeded vias after the board is complete.

- 2. **Critical Routing:** Some nets may have special needs such as a minimal routing length or routed in a particular sequence from pin to pin. Often it is easier to deal with these nets at the beginning then later on in the design when things may get dense.
- 3. **Short connections:** Short connections are very easy to route at the start of a design but because of limited options can be extremely difficult to route on a dense board if saved until the end.
- 4. **Wide Traces:** for the same reasons as mentioned above.

For general routing, you have several options available to you:

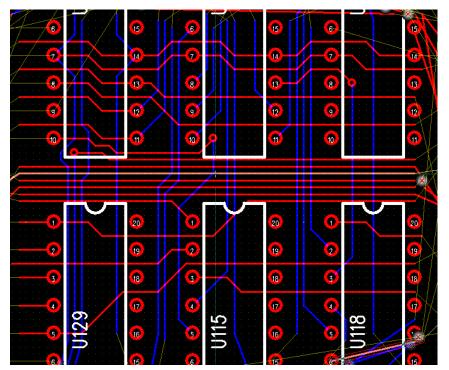
- **Autoroute:** This may be an acceptable solution on sparse to moderately dense designs or designs that have very good connection 'flow' to them. On dense boards, running the autorouter can be beneficial in determining trouble spots on the board. The autorouter settings can be modified in the User Preferences Dialog. You can always undo the results of an autoroute.
- **Partial Autoroute:** You can select a connection or group of connections, right-click the mouse, and select Autoroute from the context menu. This will engage the autorouter for just those connections.
- **Pin-To-Pin Manual Routing:** If you started your design with a netlist then you can just click on a connection (ratline) and start digitizing corners. Because there is knowledge of where the connection terminates you can double click at anytime and the system will automatically finish routing the connection using a straight line or an orthogonal pair of lines. This type of auto-finish does not avoid obstacles and may produce DRC markers.
- **Freestyle Manual Routing:** Using the Freestyle tool you can freely insert routes from pins and other routes. You can even define new connectivity this way. There is no auto-finish because there is no end-point defined. The route is terminated by pressing the escape key (leaving a dangling end) or by routing to another pin or route.

For manual routing, there are two broad strategies. One of them is intuitive and the other is less intuitive but can be a very powerful technique on dense designs.

Complete each Connection, one at a time: this is an obvious technique that involves selecting or inserting connections, one at a time, and then routing them to completion. It may require a lot of panning around and can possibly lead to a large amount of rerouting toward the end of dense designs.



Sweep route one window at a time: take a look at the picture below. It shows one completely routed window of a design. The idea is to zoom in to a comfortable magnification and to route everything in that



window. If a connection passes through the window on a diagonal, then drag it to a corner and 'tack' it there because it has no business in the current window. If you did not turn off angle snap in User Preferences then you may have to override the snap behavior by holding down the Ctrl key while routing. For connections that pass orthogonally through the window use the same tactic but find an open channel in the window and route it through the window. Once the window is complete, pan to the next window and route that one. You should start in

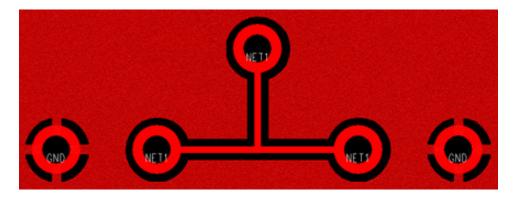
the densest region of the board and pan against the long axis of the board, I.E. if the board is mostly horizontal then pan vertically as your primary pan direction. This very powerful technique results in less rerouting and can identify serious trouble quicker than any other method.

Adding copper regions

If you need to add shielding around nets or generally make other nets as wide as possible a simple method to do this is to add copper pour regions to your design. Simply draw a closed board outline that has been assigned to a net. Objects that are contained within the board outline region that do not belong to the board outline's net will be isolated from the copper region. Those that are assigned to the same net will be tied to the copper region.

In the picture below, NET1 is surrounded by a copper pour that has been assigned to the GND net. Copper pour does not flood over anything that has a different net property than itself. Even pins that do have the same net property as the copper are cleared out and tied to the copper through 'spokes' to help soldering by focusing the heat on the pin.





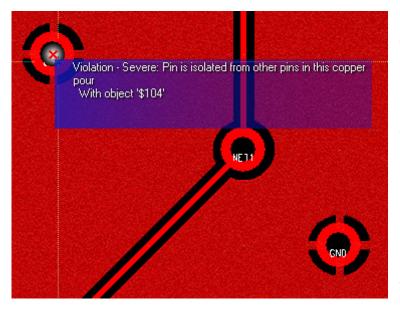
The default isolation gap between copper pour and other objects is 0.008" for standard 1oz copper clad and 0.013" for 2.5oz copper clad boards. This clearance may be increased on certain objects whose net spacing rule dictate a greater clearance, including the copper pour net itself. By specifying worst case spacing on grounds and voltages, copper pour can be safely used while guaranteeing adherence to standards and regulation bodies requirements such as Underwriter Labs (UL).

Care must be taken when adding copper pour to congested areas so that pins are not isolated. Pins that belong to the same net have connection lines, or a ratsnest between them. The connection lines disappear when:

- A continuous routed path is completed between the pins.
- The pins' net is assigned to a plane layer and the pins hit the plane layer through a plated hole.
- The pins are contained in a copper pour region assigned to the same net.

Because the display of the ratsnest is calculated on the fly, connections made with copper pour are assumed to be complete. However, this may not always be true. It is possible to isolate pins by carving up the copper pour region with too many other-net objects.

Running a full DRC check on the board will detect possible isolations and the resulting error markers should be investigated carefully. The DRC check for isolations is pessimistic. First, It rasterizes the copper



region at some minimum feature size so a pin might be flagged as isolated even though it may be connected by one or more slivers smaller than 0.004". Second, the isolation check is performed on a per-copper pour basis without regard to the rest of the net topology. This means that two pins inside a copper pour region of the same net may be reported as isolated even though they are connected by a different means such as another copper pour region on a different layer or even a plane layer. This may be corrected in the future but is currently considered beyond the scope of the software.



An example of isolated pins and the corresponding DRC error marker is shown to the left. Note that only one pin is reported as isolated as the other is considered connected to the copper. Only the smallest number of isolated pins is reported by the DRC. The largest connected set of pins is not reported as isolated to reduce the number of error markers generated.

You can also add solid regions of copper that do not clear anything out by simply leaving the net property blank.

If you add a board outline to a plane layer or a soldermask layer, you are actually clearing copper or soldermask from that region because those layers are assumed to be continuous planes and anything on them is considered a break in the plane.

Design Changes

Design changes are an inevitable unpleasant fact so PCB123 has provided some tools to make incorporating design changes as simple and painless as possible. There are two methods for performing design changes. They are:

Manual Changes: some types of changes are obvious. Adding a new component is as simple as clicking on the Add Component toolbar button and adding a connection is as simple as clicking on the Add Connection toolbar button. To delete a component just point at it and press the Del key on your keyboard. To remove a pin from a net use the connection tool, right click on a pin, and select Disconnect Pin from the Context Menu. You can change the footprint for a component in Component Properties Dialog.

Automatic ECO: if your design is captured in a schematic then a very powerful tool available to you is the Automatic ECO feature. It will compare a design against a netlist and perform all the necessary changes to the design to make it match the netlist. It will do this in a highly optimal manner, disturbing the existing design as little as it can. It will even re-bind component footprints so if nothing changed on your schematic except a part type change then it will detect that in perform the update.

Design Rule Checking

One of the last tasks you want to perform on your design is **<u>Run DRC</u>**. It is important enough that it is automatically run before you place an order. During the course of design, certain checks are done dynamically – mainly checks for shorts. Running a full DRC not only detects shorts but it also will detect opens and a range of fabrication rules such as pad annular ring size and drills too close together. Warnings may also be generated such as silkscreen on exposed copper areas such as pads.

After DRC has been run you can cycle through the errors and resolve them. Pressing the 'N' key on your keyboard will pan you to the next error. When you have reached the end of the error list, you will be prompted to run another DRC to check if you cleared them all.

Object Editing

This section describes the operation of the commands used to edit objects in the PCB123 tool environment.

Setting the grid

The quickest way to change the grid is to press the 'G' key on your keyboard. You can also select Grid from the Edit menu.

The working (snap) grid and the display grid are not independent.

See the **<u>Grid Command</u>** for more information.

See the **Grid Dialog** for more information.

Changing layers

There are many ways to change the current layer but the easiest way is to type the layer number on the keyboard. The layer numbers are:

- 1 Top layer •
- 2 Bottom layer •
- 3-6 Inner layers (if present) •
- Ctrl+1 Top soldermask (if present) (not implemented in v5) •
- Ctrl+2 – Bottom soldermask (if present) (not implemented in v5)
- Shft+1 Top silkscreen (if present) •
- Shft+2 Bottom silkscreen (if present) •

In addition to typing layer numbers, you can select View/Layer from the menu. You can also LMB click a layer in the Layer Display panel shown below:

Laye	er Di	spla	у					1	
Layer		0		٥	Т	Ъ	8		
Тор									
Bottom									
DrillDwg									
Assembly Top									
Assembly Bot									
SS Top									
SS Bot									
Mechanical									



Lastly, you can use the Layer toolbar (shown above) to click among the active layers.

Changing layers is allowed while editing many objects. For instance, while you are routing you can change the layer to insert a via at the last corner.

Changing line width

The simplest way to change the width of a line while drawing is to press the 'W' key. This will invoke the **Line Width Dialog.** You can also RMB to get the context menu, which has a Change Line Width item.

Add a component to the board

If you want to manually add a component to your design (as opposed to automatically with a netlist) then the simplest way to do this is by clicking on the Add Component Button from the Insert Object Toolbar. You can also choose Insert/Component from the menu bar. Either way you will be presented with the <u>Add Component Dialog</u> that allows you to graphically browse for a footprint that the component will use.

Move a component

Depending on your experience, there may be a tendency to point at a component, hold down the LMB and drag that component. Though this is allowed, a much easier way is to point at the component and LMB click and release. This attaches the component to your cursor and allows you to do such things as use the RMB for context commands. You click once to select it and begin moving and click again to release it where you want.

Move a component to the other side of the board

Once you have a component selected the easiest way to move it from one side of the board to the other is by pressing the 'O' (for opposite) key on your keyboard. Alternatively, with the component selected you can RMB to display the context menu and select the Opposite command.

A component placed on the bottom of the board is automatically mirrored for you.

Rotate a component

Once you have a component selected on your cursor the easiest way to rotate it is to press the 'R' key on your keyboard. Alternatively, while you have the component on your cursor you can RMB to display the context menu and then select the **Rotate** command.

Component rotation is always performed counter-clockwise.



By default, component rotations are performed in 90-degree increments but you can change this default in the **User Preferences - General dialog.**

Edit a component

There are two 'levels' of component editing: you can edit information about the component and you can edit the contents of the component.

To edit information about the component and you have one or more components selected you can press Alt+Enter on your keyboard or alternatively RMB to display the context menu and select the Properties command to invoke the <u>Component Properties dialog</u>.

To edit the contents of a component, select a component, RMB to display the context dialog, and select the Edit Footprint command. This will invoke the Footprint Editor, which allows you to graphically modify the component contents such as pins and outline data.

Add a pin to the board

If you want to manually add a pin to your design, then the simplest way to do this is by clicking on the

Add Pin Button 🦉 on the Insert Object Toolbar. You can also choose Insert/Pin from the menu bar.

Once you have selected this command, a default pin will be attached to your cursor and there will be a Pin Context Pane in the left panel that allows you to edit some of the more common pin properties.

Add a slot to the board

The PCB123 V5 Add Pin tool now includes a property to create slots on your layout and footprints. You can have up to 4 slots and cutouts on a layout when ordering through the PCB123 software. If you have more than 4 slots and cutouts you can go to wwww.sunstone.com and order through our Full Feature or Custom Quote service. Add a pin as described above and you will see the slot check box.

Select the Rectangle or Oval pad shape and set the pin properties for you plated or non-plated slots.

Move a pin

Only board-level pins can be moved in a design. To move component pins, you must edit the component in the Footprint Editor.

Depending on your experience, there may be a tendency to point at a pin, hold down the LMB and drag that pin. Though this is allowed a much easier way is to point at the pin and click it. This attaches the pin to your cursor and allows you to do such things as use the RMB for context commands. You click once to select it and begin moving and click again to release it where you want. Try it, it feels good.



Change a pin

If you have one or more pins selected you can press Alt+Enter on your keyboard or alternatively RMB to display the context menu and select the Properties command to invoke the <u>Pin Properties Dialog</u> which allows you to change any pin property.

Add a polygon or polyline

If you want to add a polyline or filled polygon to your design then the simplest way to do this is by clicking on the Add Polygon Button on the Insert Object Toolbar. You can also choose Insert > Polygon from the menu bar.

Once you have selected this command, this symbol evil will appear next to the cursor informing you that you are in Add Polygon mode and the system is waiting for you to click the first corner. After clicking the first corner, a line segment will then be drawn from the last corner clicked to the current cursor location. To stop digitizing the board outline you can either press the Esc key on your keyboard or just double-click the last corner.

If you double back over a line segment, the overlapping portion of the segment will be removed. You can keep doubling back to the previous corner to incrementally undo the board outline.

Once you have selected this command there will be a Polygon Context Pane in the left panel that allows you to edit some of the more common board outline properties.

You can also perform many of the global commands such as **<u>Change Grid</u>** while creating board outlines.

Add a circle

If you want to add a hollow circle to your design then the simplest way to do this is by clicking on the

Add Circle Button 9 on the Insert Object Toolbar. You can also choose Insert/Circle from the menu bar.

Once you have selected this command, this symbol will appear next to the cursor informing you that you are in Add Circle mode and the system is waiting for you to click the circle center. After clicking the circle center moving the mouse simply adjusts the circle radius. Click again at the desired radius to accept.

You can also perform many of the global commands such as **Change Grid** while creating circles.

Add an arc

If you want to add an arc to your design then the simplest way to do this is by clicking on the Add Arc Button
on the Insert Object Toolbar. You can also choose Insert/Arc from the menu bar.

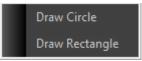


Once you have selected this command, this symbol will appear next to the cursor informing you that you are in Add Arc mode and the system is waiting for you to click one end of the arc segment. After clicking the arc start, you will be rubber banding a line. Click again to establish the arc end then any mouse movement will adjust the radius. After you have the desired radius click again to accept the arc.

You can also perform many of the global commands such as **<u>Change Grid</u>** while creating arcs.

Add a cutout

In V5 you can now add cutouts to your designs using the Create Cutout tool . You can order through PCB123 with up to slots and cutouts in your layout. If you have more than 4 PCB123 will not allow you to order through the software. If you have more than 4 slots and cutouts you can go to the www.sunstone.com website to order through our Full Feature or Custom Quote service.



The cutout tool allows you to draw rectangular cutouts with up to 4 vertices and round cutouts. The cutout shapes are automatically included as part of your board outline. These objects can be moved and rotated independent of the board outline.

Move a board outline

To move an entire board outline just left click on it and drag, releasing the mouse button when you have position the board outline where you want.

Move board outline corners

Moving a board outline corner is simple: just point at a board outline corner, left-click, and release. Now you are moving a board outline corner. Just click again to release the corner where you want.

Delete board outline corners

Mouse over a board outline corner or corner or any polygon and press the d key. This process can also be accomplished with the mouse simply by selecting a corner and dropping it on the previous or next corner in the board outline. It is called corner reduction. It is very efficient, and can all be done with the mouse.



Insert corners in a board outline

To insert a corner in a board outline simply click on the middle third of a segment or at least .050" away from a corner. You will then be in digitizing mode that allows you to add corners until you stop by pressing the Esc key, double clicking, or inserting another corner at the same location as the previous one.

Add a connection between two pins

To add a connection between two pins click on the Connection Tool **to** place the system in Add Connection Mode. Once in this mode simply click on the first pin you want to add the connection between. After clicking on the first pin, you will be rubber-banding a line while the system waits for you to click on the other pin that completes the connection.

If neither pin is tied to a net then a new, unique net name will be created for the connection. If one of the pins is tied to a net, then the connection and the other pin will inherit that net name. If both pins are tied to different nets then you will be **prompted to merge the nets together**.

Remove a pin from a net

To remove or disconnect a pin from a net first make sure you have the Select Object tool active then mouse over a pin you wish to disconnect. Right click on the pin and select Disconnect pin from net.

Alternatively, you can navigate to the pin in the Object Hierarchy tree and select Properties from the context menu. This will invoke the <u>Pin Properties Dialog</u> where you can either disconnect the pin from any net or assign it to a different net.

Start routing from a pin

If there is already a ratline (connection) tied to a pin simply click on it to begin routing. If the pin is a thru-hole pin then you will be routing on the current layer. If the pin is an SMD pin then the route will begin on whatever surface layer the pin is on. Once you have begun routing you can continue to digitize new corners until the route is completed or you press the Esc key to stop routing.

Alternatively, you can click on the FreeStyle Routing Tool and then click on a pad to start routing. The same features as above apply in this mode with the only difference being if the pin was not previously tied to a net then a new, unique net name will be created with the pin and the route tied to it.

Start routing from another route



You can start a new route from a previous on by clicking on the FreeStyle Routing Tool and then clicking on an existing route. The new route will inherit the net from the route you clicked on and you will be routing on the same layer as that route.

Add a via between layers

There are a few ways to add vias.

1. You can use the add pin tool to place a via manually at any location. This will create a via that is exposed through the solder mask and is thermally relieved when connected to filled polygons and plane layers.

2. A fanout via: To end a trace at a via you can start routing your trace at a pad. When you get to the location you would like to add your via left click and press the v key on your keyboard. A fanout via will be covered by solder mask and will be thermally relieved in a plane layer but not thermally relieved in a filled polygon.

3. Add a via while routing a trace and continue routing on another layer: Start a trace at a pad and route to the location you will need a via. Left click to stop the trace. If you are routing on a two layer board you can press the z key on your keyboard. This will add a via and switch you to the opposing layer to continue routing. If you are routing on a multi-layer board you can use the number key across the top of you keyboard to add a via and switch layers to continue routing. This type of via will be covered by solder mask and will be thermally relieved in a plane layer but not thermally relieved in a filled polygon.

1 = top 2 = bottom 3 = inner layer 1 4 = inner layer 2 5 = inner layer 3 6 = inner layer 4

Example:

You are routing on the top layer and you want to add a via and continue routing on layer 2 (inner layer 1) of a multi-layer board: Start your trace from a pad on the top layer. Route to the location you will need a via. Left click and press the number 3 key across the top of your keyboard. This will add the via and switch to inner layer 1 (layer 2 of your layout) to allow you to continue routing. Route the trace to the desired end-point.

An alternative to using the number key across the top of your keyboard is to use the toolbar on the far right side of your screen. This toolbar works just like pressing the number keys across the top of your keyboard. Press the button corresponding to the layer you would like to continue routing on. A description of the buttons follows.



Insert corners in a route

To insert a corner in a route simply click on the middle third of a segment, or at least .050" away from a corner and you will by in a digitizing mode that allows you to add corners until you stop by either pressing the Esc key or double clicking to auto-complete the segment. It is easy to tell if you are in Insert Corners mode because the segment you click on is essentially "ripped up" and will show a ratine from the cursor to the next corner.

Delete route corners

Mouse over a corner and press the d key to delete a corner. This process can also be accomplished with the mouse simply by selecting a corner and dropping it on the previous or next corner in the board outline. It's called corner reduction. It is very efficient and can all be done with the mouse.

It can also be accomplished by getting into Insert Corners mode and effectively routing "backwards" as doubling back over existing corners has the effect of removing them.

Move a route corner

Moving a route corner is simple: just point at a corner, left-click, and release. Now you are moving the corner. Just click again to release the corner where you want.

Releasing the corner over the prior or next corner has the effect of deleting the prior or next segment.

Move a route segment

If you point at a route segment and hold down the left mouse button while dragging, the entire route segment will move with the cursor.

Change the width of a route segment

You can only change the width of an individual route segment while you are routing by pressing the 'W' key on your keyboard or RMB and selecting Width... from the context menu. To change the width of an existing route segment you must first click on that segment to get into Insert Corner mode and then press the 'W' key.

Add text to the board

If you want to add text to your design then the simplest way to do this is by clicking on the Add Text Button **T** on the Insert Object Toolbar. You can also choose Insert/Text from the menu bar.



Once you have selected this command you will immediately be prompted for the string to add with the **Add Text Dialog**. After entering a string and dismissing the dialog a piece of text will be attached to your cursor. While it is attached you can press the 'R' key to rotate it, the 'W' key to change its width, or a layer number to change its layer. When changing its layer interactively it will automatically toggle its mirrored state between the top and bottom layer.

Whenever you have a piece of text attached to your cursor you can modify many of its properties then and there in the Text Pane of the Edit Panel. You can always select Properties on the text to display the **Text Properties Dialog**.

You can also perform many of the global commands such as **Change Grid** while creating text.

Rename a component

If you are new to PCB123 renaming a component may appear counter-intuitive at first because you may just point at a reference designator text object and attempt to change its name only to find that you can't. You must select the component object and change its name in the <u>Component Properties</u> <u>Dialog</u>. The text object is just a manifestation of a macro placeholder (&RefDes) that inherits its value from the component reference designator. When you change the component name the text will automatically reflect the new name.

When you rename a component for the first time a special attribute record is generated internally that remembers the original name. The original name will appear in a BOM Report so you can back-annotate your schematic if you so desire. This is also to facilitate the automatic back-annotation of schematics in the future.

Designing a board without a netlist

Depending upon the nature or complexity of the design, you may opt to skip a schematic altogether and start right in on the physical layout. In this case, you probably will not use or need a netlist or a schematic editor. PCB123 can support you on these very simple designs as well. Just dive right in with physical layout.

About loading a Netlist

If you have captured your design in a schematic tool then you should be able to create a netlist that PCB123 can import. If you use the PCB123 schematics package to capture your design then any device you use from the standard libraries will be mapped to a footprint in the layout software.

If you are using a third party schematics package it should be able to emit a Tango or Protel formatted netlist that can be read into the PCB123 layout software. The devices you use in the third-party schematics package most likely will not specify an explicit footprint that matches the PCB123 library. Not to fear: when you load a netlist that specifies footprints that cannot be matched in the library, or a netlist



that only specifies part types then during the netlist load process you will be prompted to browse for a footprint with a very flexible tool called the <u>Part Browser</u>. This tools lets you perform a search against various criteria and graphically preview the footprints. Once you have selected a footprint to use you will be given the opportunity to let the system forever remember the mapping between your part type and the footprint you chose for that part. It will not ask for a footprint again when it encounters that part.

You can import your netlist from three different locations.

- 1. The new board wizard.
- 2. The board configuration on the first run.

3. With a board in view select Design > Netlist > Compare/Update Design. This is just about the same as previous version. After you have selected the netlist you will see the new UI shown below.

list Component		**	PCB123 Component		
Part Type	Package	^			
74500	SO14NB				
BP_FILT	DFC2				
CAP_0.1UF_X7R	CC0805L				
CAP_0.1UF_X7R_0603	CC0603L				
CAP_10000PF_X7R	CC0603L				
CAP_1000PF_X7R	CC0603L				
CAP_100PF_X7R	CC0603L				
CAP_12PF_0402	CC0402L				
CAP_12PF_0603	CC0603L				
CAP_15PF	CC0402L				
CAP_2.7PF	CC0603L				Properti
CAP_22PF	CC0603L		1 12 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19 19		Manufacturer
CAP_3.3PF	CC0402L		Footprint		
CAP_3.9PF	CC0402L				
CAP_33000PF_X7R	CC0603L		Width	usala.	Part Number
CAP_47000PF_X7R	CC0603L		Wiath	Height	
CAP_SUPERCAP_0.2UF	SUPERCAP			-	Digi-Key Part Number
CAP_TANT_10V_10UF	7227		Pin Count	Drill Size	
DW9255	DW9255				Datasheet
GP2015	LQFP48				
GP2021	MQFP_80		Package Library		Symbol Library
HEADER_9	HEADER_9				
HM628127HB	SOJ_32		Description		Description
HN27C1024HG	LQFP48				
IND_COILCRAFT_18NH					
TND COTI CDAFT RRNH	TNDOROSN	~			

The red ! in the left column tells you that you have not selected a footprint for this row. The second column is the name of the symbol in your netlist. The third column is the name of the footprint from your netlist. Select a row and then go up to the two buttons in the upper right corner of the table

. The left button 🔛 allows you to select a part from the parts taxonomy. The right button

allows you to select a part directly from the footprint libraries.

As you select your parts you will see the red ! change to green check marks. Once you have all of the



parts selected you can select the OK button and all of the parts will be placed on a blank board outline.

If you encounter an error you may have selected a footprint that does not match the information listed in your netlist. You will see a popup text dialogue with information that will help you to locate the issue. After selecting the correct footprint select OK and you will arrive at your layout with all of the parts on the screen.

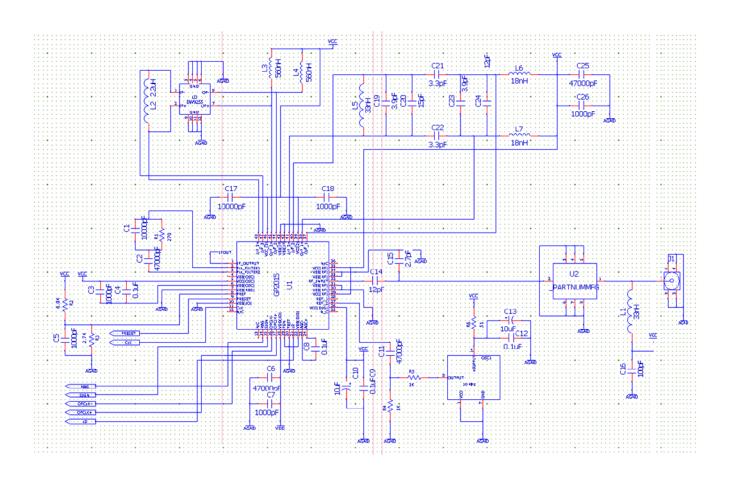
Go directly to Design > Netlist > Compare/Update Design to make your modifications.

Starting the layout with a netlist opens a large array of benefits that you may or may not take advantage of. They include:

- **Autoplace** You can run the Autoplace tool. This tool can be real handy just to gauge board density and get a feel for the overall flow of routing.
- Placement Optimization You can easily see what is connected to what as you place components on the board. In addition, the length of nets is continuously optimized as you move part around.
- **Easier Rules Specification** With all nets specified at once you can specify which ones need special width or spacing considerations and establish which nets are tied to any plane layers.
- Fanout and Autorouting With a complete netlist loaded, you can run automatic tools that fanout surface mount devices and autoroute your board. Even if you don't normally use an autorouter running it can identify trouble spots in your design.
- Automatic ECO If you make a change to your schematic after your layout has been started you can compare the new netlist against the design and have the system automatically make the necessary changes to the design so that it matches the new netlist.



Part 4 - Schematic Reference





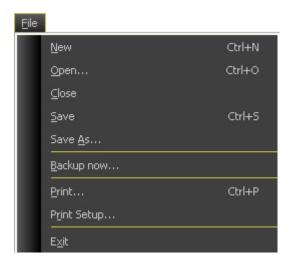
Main Menu

When in schematic view, the following menu bar is displayed.

Eile Edit Insert View Tools PCB123 Window Help

If you do not have a design open, only the File, View, PCB123, and Help menu items are available.

File menu



New

The File-New command is one method of creating a new PCB design. It will invoke the Board Configuration Dialog to allow you to set board parameters or load a netlist unless you have checked the Do Not Show button in the Board Configuration dialog in which case a blank design is created.

Open...

The File-Open command invokes a standard Windows file dialog that allows you to browse to and select one or more PCB123 design files. You can select multiple designs to open by holding down the Shift or Ctrl key while clicking on files. If you select multiple design files, each one will be opened in its own window.

160 •



Close

The File-Close command closes the currently active design. If the design has been modified, you will first be prompted to save your changes.

Save

The File-Save command writes a copy of the currently active design to disk using the same filename the design was opened with. If it is a new design that hasn't been previously saved, then you will be prompted for a filename to save as (see below).

Save As...

The File-Save As command prompts you for a filename using the standard Window file dialog. This will write a copy of the currently active design to disk under the name supplied. If the file exists, you will be prompted to overwrite the existing file.

The entire state of your design is saved to disk with the exception of DRC markers and the local footprint cache. All display settings are saved in the file so the next time the file is opened it will appear the same as when it was saved.

Backup Now

The File-Backup Now command initiates an immediate backup of the currently active design.

Normally, in the course of design, PCB123 automatically saves a backup of all open designs once every ten minutes. It saves them to the Backup subdirectory using the name of the design and appending "_BACKUPn" where n is from 1 to 5, 1 being the most recent backup.

Print



The File-Print command invokes a schematic print dialog box.

From the Schematic print command, you can print the current page or all schematic pages in your design. You can specify who to fit or scale your output, and you can specify color printing options.



Print Setup

The File-Print Setup command invokes the standard Windows print setup dialog and is used to set print defaults for the above print command.

Exit

The File-Exit command exits the PCB123 program. You will be prompted to save any modified documents that you may have open.



Edit menu

Undo

The Edit-Undo command undoes the last change to currently active design. Virtually all changes to the design are recorded and can be undone in reverse order they were made. There is no limit to the size of the undo buffer other than memory limitations.

What constitutes a change for purposes of undo is operation dependent. In many cases an entire group of changes will be undone with a single undo command. For instance, selecting undo after an autoroute will undo the entire autoroute results, not just the last connection the autorouter completed.

When a change is undone, that change will be added to the Redo buffer in case you change your mind and want to redo it again. See below.

162 •



Redo

The Edit-Redo command redoes the last undo operation. Repeated undo operations are stored to the redo buffer so you can redo a whole series of undo operations.

Cut

The Edit-Cut command deletes the currently selected set of objects and places them into the paste buffer. There is only one paste buffer so only the last cut operation is available for paste.

See the Paste command for more information.

Сору

The Edit-Copy command copies the currently selected set of objects into the paste buffer. There is only one paste buffer so only the last copy operation is available for paste.

See the Paste command below for more information.

Paste

The Edit-Paste command makes a copy of the objects in the paste buffer and inserts them into the currently active design.

First, any components in the paste buffer are added to the design by assigning them a new reference designator that does not conflict with one already in the design. Their alpha-prefix is retained.

Next, any complete routes or connections that start and end at a pins that are also in the paste buffer will be added to the design. They will retail their original net name with a unique numerical suffix.

Lastly, all text and non-net-attributed board outlines will be copied without change. Net-attributed board outlines will either inherit a cloned net name or retain their original net names depending on whether their original net names were cloned during the paste operation.

After all objects are created, they will be in a selected state attached to the cursor ready to be placed.

Delete

The Edit-Delete command deletes all selected objects from the currently active design.

The delete operation can later be undone.

163 •

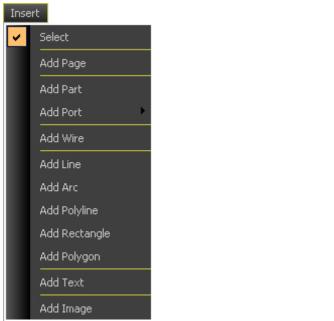


Properties

The Edit-Properties command is context sensitive. If you have nothing selected it invokes the Board Configuration Dialog. If you have one or more objects selected, then you will get a property page for each class of object selected.

See Object Property Pages for more information.

Insert menu



Top-level Insert menu

Insert Port submenu



Add Page

The Insert-Add Page command inserts a new, blank schematic page for use in your design.

Often, designers will find it helpful to break the schematic into multiple pages organized by function. The network connections between these pages are accomplished using port connectors. The entire schematic network is then made available to the layout page for physical design.



Add Part

The Insert-Add Part command displays the Select Part dialog box, allowing you to search for, preview and select the part you need from the schematic parts taxonomy.

Add Analog Ground Port

The Insert-Add Port – AGND command provides you quick and easy access to a predefined analog ground symbol.

By selecting the Analog Ground Port, your cursor moves into parts placement mode with an analog ground pin ready to be placed.

Add Digital Ground Port

The Insert-Add Port – DGND command provides you quick and easy access to a predefined analog ground symbol.

By selecting the Digital Ground Port, your cursor moves into parts placement mode with a digital ground pin ready to be placed.

Add Voltage Port

The Insert-Add Port – Voltage command provides you quick and easy access to a predefined analog ground symbol.

By selecting the Voltage Port, your cursor moves into parts placement mode with a voltage port ready to be placed.

Add Global Port

The Insert-Add Port – Global Net command provides you quick and easy access to a predefined analog ground symbol.

By selecting the Global Net, your cursor moves into parts placement mode with a voltage port ready to be placed.

Global nets serve to connect to the net with the same net name across the entire set of schematic pages.



Add Off-Page Port

The Insert-Add Port > Off-page Port command provides you quick and easy access to a predefined off page port symbol.

By selecting the Off-page Port, your cursor moves into parts placement mode with an off-page connector ready to be placed.

Off-Page connectors are similar in function to global nets.

Add Line

The Insert-Add Line command allows you to add line objects to the currently active design schematic by first defining one endpoint, then the other.

Add Arc

The Insert-Add Arc command allows you to add arc objects to the currently active design or footprint by first defining one endpoint, then the other, and then adjusting the radius.

Arcs have definite width and are always chords of a perfect circle. They cannot be elliptical.

Add Polyline

The Insert-Add Polyline command allows you to add a poly-line object to the currently active design.

A polyline is a continuous series of line segments. They have a physical width and may be net attributed. In most cases polylines are not net attributed as they are widely used for nomenclature such as component outlines and title blocks.

Once you enter add polyline mode, a series of straight line segments will be connected between each successive left-mouse click. Double click on the last point to terminate the polyline definition process.

Add Rectangle

The Insert-Add Rectangle command allows you to begin digitizing corners of rectangular board outlines.

As you add a rectangle, you will be prompted to digitize two opposite corner points. The rectangle will determine its width and length from these two points.

Add Polygon

The Insert >Add Polygon command allows you to begin digitizing corners of polygon and polylines.



A polyline is a continuous series of line segments. They have a physical width and may be net attributed. In most cases polylines are not net attributed as they are widely used for nomenclature such as component outlines and title blocks.

A polygon is a closed 2-D surface. They do not have width. What you draw is the absolute edge of the board outline. They can be convex or concave but should not self-intersect.

See the Board outline Context Pane and the Board outline Property Page for more information.

Add Text

View menu

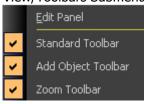
The Insert-Add Text command allows you to add rendered text "strings" to the currently active design or footprint. When you first select this command you will be prompted for the string to add with the Add Text Dialog.

Currently, only the ANSI character set is supported. Extended ASCII characters are not rendered but are stored in the string.

There is only one font available for text strings because the characters must be stroked and there is no reliable way to convert a TrueType font into a series of strokes that can be added to the board. This may change in the future.



View/Toolbars Submenu



View/Zoom Submenu



Zoom <u>I</u> n	PgUp
Zoom <u>O</u> ut	PgDn
Zoom <u>A</u> ll	Home
Actual Size	
Pan <u>U</u> p	UpArrow
Pan <u>L</u> eft	LeftArrow
Pan <u>R</u> ight	RightArrow
Pan <u>D</u> own	DownArrow
Redraw	End
Center	

View Standard Toolbar

The Toolbars/Standard Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Standard Toolbar.

View Add Object Toolbar

The Toolbars/Add Object Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Add Object Toolbar.

View Zoom Toolbar

The Toolbars/Zoom Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Zoom Toolbar.

Zoom Submenu

The Toolbars/Zoom Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Zoom Toolbar.

Zoom In

The Zoom/Zoom In command increases the magnification of the display. If this command was invoked through the menu then the view center remains unchanged. If this command was invoked with the PgUp key then the view center will be where the cursor was when the command was invoked.

Zoom Out



The Zoom/Zoom Out command decreases the magnification of the display. If this command was invoked through the menu then the view center remains unchanged. If this command was invoked with the PgDn key then the view center will be where the cursor was when the command was invoked.

Zoom All

The Zoom/Zoom All command sets the screen magnification such that all objects fit on, and are centered on the screen.

Pan Up

The Zoom/Pan Up command moves the view center up nearly one full screen height.

Pan Left

The Zoom/Pan Left command moves the view center to the left nearly one full screen width.

Pan Right

The Zoom/Pan Right command moves the view center to the right nearly one full screen width.

Pan Down

The Zoom/Pan Down command moves the view center down nearly one full screen height.

Redraw

The Zoom/Redraw command repaints the screen.

Tools menu

Symbol Editor...

The Tools – Symbol Editor... command will present the user with the Symbol Editor dialog box, ready to create a new symbol from scratch. The function of the symbol editor is discussed elsewhere in this manual.

169 •



Manage Parts...

The Tools – Manage Parts... command will present the user with the Define Part dialog box. From here, the user can create parts, review or edit the contents of parts, and delete parts as needed.

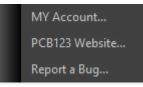
Electrical Rules Check...

Generate Netlist from Schematic...

The Tools – Generate Netlist from Schematic command will create a netlist file of your schematics' electrical network. The user will be presented with a Windows standard file save dialog box, allowing the user to specify the location for the netlist file to be output.

PCB123 menu

Top Level PCB123 menu



MY Account...

The PCB123 – My Account command will invoke a browser session to your account status page at Sunstone.com. Once you've logged in, you can view your personal account settings including: your default user preferences (shipping address, carrier, payment method, etc.); personal profile information (name, company, email, etc.); and recent order activity including current status for any orders in process.

PCB123 Website...

The PCB123 – PCB123 Website command will invoke a browser session at www.sunstone.com



Report a Bug...

The PCB123 – Report a Bug command will invoke a browser session and take you to the Contact Us page for technical support on the <u>www.sunstone.com</u> website. From here you can report the bug details. Customer Service will acknowledge receipt of your bug report, and follow up with you as necessary.

Window menu

Cascade

The Window – Cascade command will rearrange open design windows into a cascading pattern.

Tile

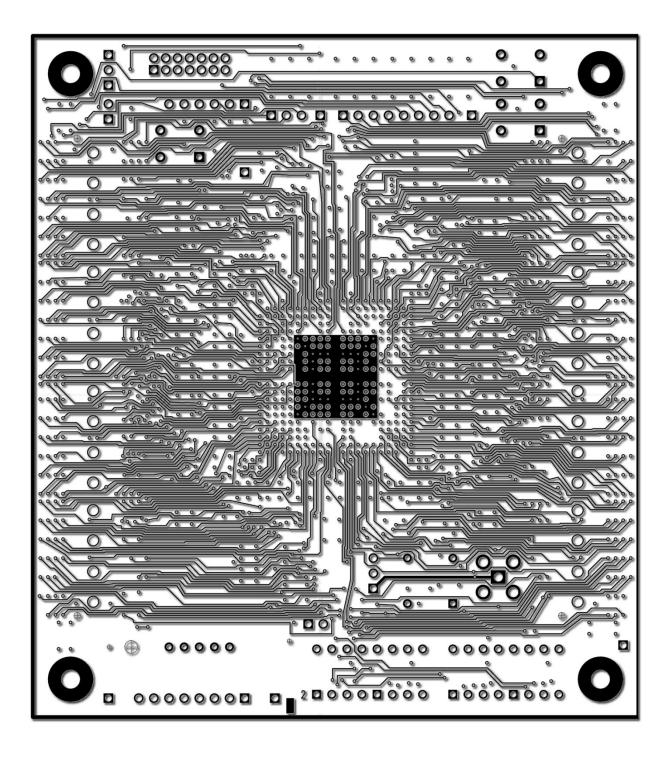
The Window – Tile command will rearrange open design windows into a tiled pattern.

Arrange Icons

The Window – Arrange Icons command will move any iconized design files into an orderly row across the bottom of the PCB123 editing pane background.



Part 5 - Layout Reference





Main Menu

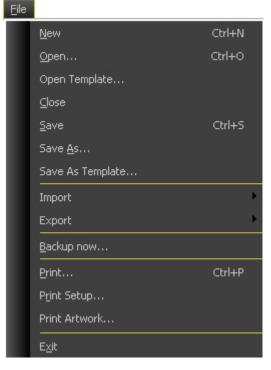
When you have a design open and Layout view is active, then the main menu bar will appear as follows:

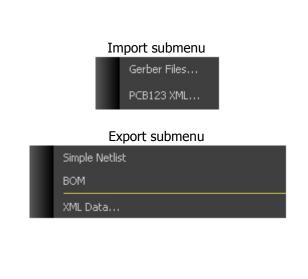
🚾 Eile Edit Insert View Design PCB123 Window Help

If you do not have a design open, only the File, View, PCB123, and Help menu items are available.

File menu

Top-level File menu





New command

The File-New command is one method of creating a new PCB design. It will invoke the Board Configuration Dialog to allow you to set board parameters or load a netlist unless you have checked the Do Not Show button in the Board Configuration dialog in which case a blank design is created.



Open... command

The File-Open command invokes a standard Windows file dialog that allows you to browse to and select one or more PCB123 design files. You can select multiple designs to open by holding down the Shift or Ctrl key while clicking on files. If you select multiple design files, each one will be opened in its own window.

Close command

The File-Close command closes the currently active design. If the design has been modified, you will first be prompted to save your changes.

Save command

The File-Save command writes a copy of the currently active design to disk using the same filename the design was opened with. If it is a new design that hasn't been previously saved, then you will be prompted for a filename to save as (see below).

Save As... command

The File-Save As command prompts you for a filename using the standard Window file dialog. This will write a copy of the currently active design to disk under the name supplied. If the file exists, you will be prompted to overwrite the existing file.

The entire state of your design is saved to disk with the exception of DRC markers and the local footprint cache. All display settings are saved in the file so the next time the file is opened it will appear the same as when it was saved.

Save As Template... command

The File-Save As Template command saves the currently active design as a template for design reuse. Only a limited set of objects are saved as a template – specifically, board outlines, components, holes, text and board outlines. Net information and routing is not saved as a template, though this may change in the future.

You will be prompted for a descriptive name for the template and it will automatically be placed in the Templates subdirectory. The saved template is stored as a Sunstone NLF (Neutral Library Format) file. This is a fully encapsulated format. There are no external references. All data is represented in the file.

174 •



Import Gerber

PCB123 will allow you to import gerber and NC drill data. This is experimental and use it with caution. At this time the drill data does not import with the correct sizes and all negative polarity layers will not import correctly.

Import PCB123 XML

Import XML designs exported using PCB123's export XML option. This provides you with an alternative method to view and edit your PCB123 design.

Export BOM command

The Export BOM (Bill Of Materials) command outputs a BOM report for the currently active design. You will first be prompted for a report filename (default is design name with a .bom extension) and you will then be prompted to view the report.

The BOM report is a simple linear list of components alphabetically sorted by reference designator. In addition, each entry lists the components part type, footprint name, and the original component name if the component has been subsequently renamed.

Export Netlist command

The Export Netlist command outputs a native PCB123 netlist report for the currently active design. You will first be prompted for a netlist filename (default is design name with a .net extension) and you will then be prompted to view the netlist.

There are two sections in the netlist report. The first section is a linear list of components alphabetically sorted by reference designator. The second section is a linear list of nets alphabetically sorted by net name. Inside each net there will be a list of zero or more component pins.

Export XML Data

Export your PCB123 design in XML format.

Backup Now... command

The File-Backup Now command initiates an immediate backup of the currently active design.

Normally, in the course of design, PCB123 automatically saves a backup of all open designs once every ten minutes. It saves them to the Backup subdirectory using the name of the design and appending "_BACKUPn" where n is from 1 to 5, 1 being the most recent backup.



Print... command

The File-Print command invokes the standard Windows print dialog and will print whatever is visible on the screen. It is meant for quick screen shots when you want a hard copy of some isolated section of the board or a reference print that is not scale dependent.

If you need scaled prints of the entire design use the Print Artwork command.

Print Setup... command

The File - Print Setup command invokes the standard Windows dialog for configuring the print settings. Along with specifying the printer to use, this command can also be used to set paper sizes and orientation for print jobs.

Print Artwork... command

The File-Print Artwork command invokes the Print Artwork dialog that allows you to do a detailed print that will match what you see on the boards that will be built. In fact, the Print Artwork command executes the same code that Sunstone generates Gerber files from with the exception of non-plated holes which are a special case to Print Artwork and will show up in the prints.

See the Print Artwork Dialog for more details.

Exit command

The File-Exit command exits the PCB123 program. You will be prompted to save any modified documents that you may have open.



Edit menu

Top-level Edit Menu			S	Selection submenu				
<u>E</u> d	undo	Ctrl+Z		~	Select Pins			
1	<u>R</u> edo	Ctrl+2 Ctrl+Y		7	Select Polygons			
	Cu <u>t</u>	Ctrl+X		<u> </u>				
	⊆ору			× 1	Select Text			
1	<u>P</u> aste <u>D</u> elete	Ctrl+V Del		~	Select Components			
1	Load Selection			~	Select Tracks			
	Save Selection				Select anything			
	Find				Selecciality child			
	Bring to Cursor				Select nothing			
	Measure							
	Line Width	W						
	Grid							
	1/2 Grid							
	2x Grid							
	Selection	•						
	Properties							

Undo command

The Edit-Undo command undoes the last change to currently active design. Virtually all changes to the design are recorded and can be undone in reverse order they were made. There is no limit to the size of the undo buffer other than memory limitations.

What constitutes a change for purposes of undo is operation dependent. In many cases an entire group of changes will be undone with a single undo command. For instance, selecting undo after an autoroute will undo the entire autoroute results, not just the last connection the autorouter completed.

When a change is undone, that change will be added to the Redo buffer in case you change your mind and want to redo it again. See below.

Redo command

The Edit-Redo command redoes the last undo operation. Repeated undo operations are stored to the redo buffer so you can redo a whole series of undo operations.

Cut command

The Edit-Cut command deletes the currently selected set of objects and places them into the paste buffer. There is only one paste buffer so only the last cut operation is available for paste.

See the Paste command for more information.



Copy command

The Edit-Copy command copies the currently selected set of objects into the paste buffer. There is only one paste buffer so only the last copy operation is available for paste.

See the Paste command below for more information.

Paste command

The Edit-Paste command makes a copy of the objects in the paste buffer and inserts them into the currently active design.

First, any components in the paste buffer are added to the design by assigning them a new reference designator that does not conflict with one already in the design. Their alpha-prefix is retained.

Next, any complete routes or connections that start and end at a pins that are also in the paste buffer will be added to the design. They will retail their original net name with a unique numerical suffix.

Lastly, all text and non-net-attributed board outlines will be copied without change. Net-attributed board outlines will either inherit a cloned net name or retain their original net names depending on whether their original net names were cloned during the paste operation.

After all objects are created, they will be in a selected state attached to the cursor ready to be placed.

Delete command

The Edit-Delete command deletes all selected objects from the currently active design.

The delete operation can later be undone.

Load Selection... command

The Edit-Load Selection command is identical to the Paste operation except the pasted objects are from a previously saved set of objects or from a design template as opposed from the paste buffer. You will be prompted for a selection to load.

Currently this operation excludes any net information. A saved selection can contain everything except nets. See the Save Selection command for more information.

Save Selection... command

The Edit-Save Selection command saves the selected objects from the currently active design to a disk file for later reuse. No net information is currently saved though this may change in the future.



This command is only available when you have an object or objects selected. Once invoked, you will be prompted for a description of the selection set.

Find... command

The Edit-Find command prompts you for the name of an object in the currently active design and then centers the viewport on that object.

See the Find Dialog for more details.

Bring to Cursor... command

The Edit-Bring to Cursor command is similar to the Find command but instead of zooming you to an object it selects the named object and snaps it to the cursor.

See the Find Dialog for more details.

Measure... command

The Measure command activates the ruler and allows you to measure the distance between objects.

Line Width command

The Edit-Line Width command is only available when you are adding/editing polylines and routes. When selected, you will be prompted to enter a line width with the Line Width Dialog.

For polylines, the new line width applies to the whole polyline.

For routes, the new line width applies to the currently active line segment and subsequent segments you add to the route.

Grid command

The Edit-Grid command sets the working (snap) grid and the display grid for the currently active design. You can set the X and Y grid independent by separating the two values with a comma.

See the Grid Dialog for more details.

Select Pins command

The Edit-Select Pins command toggles the ability to select board-level pin objects in the currently active design or component pins in Edit Footprint window.



Select Polygons command

The Edit-Select Polygon command toggles the ability to select Polygon objects in the currently active design.

Select Text command

The Edit-Select Text command toggles the ability to select text objects in the currently active design.

Select Components command

The Edit-Select Components command toggles the ability to select component objects in the currently active design.

Select Tracks command

The Edit-Select Tracks command toggles the ability to select track (route) objects in the currently active design.

Select Anything command

The Edit-Select Anything command turns on the ability to select all objects in the currently active design.

Select Nothing command

The Edit-Select Nothing command turns off the ability to select of all objects in the currently active design.

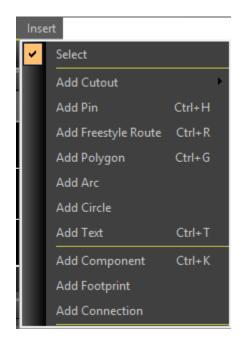
Properties command

The Edit-Properties command is context sensitive. If you have nothing selected it invokes the Board Configuration Dialog. If you have one or more objects selected, then you will get a property page for each class of object selected.

See Object Property Pages for more information.



Insert menu



Select command

The Insert-Select command is the default state for selecting objects. When you stop adding or modifying objects by pressing the Escape key or selecting RMB-Cancel the system enters the Select state.

Add Cutout

The Add Cutout command allows you to choose to draw **cutouts** circular or rectangular cutouts. The cutouts are automatically added to the board outline layer. A cutout drawing using Draw Rectangle may have a maximum of four vertices.

Add Pin command

The Insert-Add Pin command immediately allows you to start adding pins to the currently active design or footprint.

When you first select this command, a pin will be attached to the cursor whose properties will be defaulted, usually to the same values as the last pin inserted.



181 •

By default, board-level pins do not have names, though they can be assigned names – even duplicate names. Board-level pins do not show up in a netlist report, only component pins do.

When creating a footprint, pins names start at 1 by default and increment from there. The only time a pin name can be reused in a footprint is if it has no name at all.

See the Pin Context Pane and the Pin Properties page for more information.

Add Freestyle Route command

The Insert-Add Freestyle Route command allows you to begin digitizing new route corners. You must start the new route from a pin or another route. If starting from another route, the new route will inherit the starting route's layer and net.

If starting from a pin the new route layer will either be the pin layer in the case of a SMD pin or the current layer if it is a thru-hole pin. If the starting pin already has a net attribute then the route will inherit that pins net.

Once you have started routing you can digitize new corners by left-clicking the mouse and you can insert vias by changing layers or pressing the 'Z' key or change the current width by pressing the 'W' key.

To terminate a freestyle route you can press the escape key, click on another pin, or click on another track on the same layer as the last segment. If the new route has a temporary net then it will be 'hardened' by either inheriting the terminating objects net property or by creating a new net and assigning everything in the temporary net to the new net.

Add Polygon command

The Insert-Add Polygon command allows you to begin digitizing corners of polygon and polylines.

A polyline is a continuous series of line segments. They have a physical width and may be net attributed. In most cases polylines are not net attributed as they are widely used for nomenclature such as component outlines and title blocks.

A polygon is a closed 2-D surface. They do not have width. What you draw is the absolute edge of the polygon. They can be convex or concave but should not self-intersect.

If a board polygon has no net attribute, then the entire polygon is filled.

If a polygon does have a net attribute, then it becomes a copper pour and any object inside the polygon that does not have the same net attribute is "scratched" out of the polygon so as not to create a short. If a pin resides inside a copper pour polygon, and that pin has the same net attribute then the pin is cleared for thermal isolation but "spokes" are added between the pin and the copper pour to tie them together electrically. Determining where a thermal spoke is legal can be a fairly intensive calculation. Therefore what you see on the screen is only an approximation of the actual spokes. You must perform a Print Artwork to get a true representation of the thermal spokes.



See the Board outline Context Pane and the Polygon Property Page for more information.

Add Arc command

The Insert-Add Arc command allows you to add arc objects to the currently active design or footprint by first defining one endpoint, then the other, and then adjusting the radius.

Arcs have definite width and are always chords of a perfect circle. They cannot be elliptical.

Add Circle command

The Insert-Add Circle command allows you to add hollow circle objects to the currently active design or footprint by first defining the circle center, and then sweeping out a radius.

Circles have definite width. They cannot be elliptical.

Add Text command

The Insert-Add Text command allows you to add rendered text "strings" to the currently active design or footprint. When you first select this command you will be prompted for the string to add with the Add Text Dialog.

Currently, only the ANSI character set is supported. Extended ASCII characters are not rendered but are stored in the string.

There is only one font available for text strings because the characters must be stroked and there is no reliable way to convert a TrueType font into a series of strokes that can be added to the board. This may change in the future.

Add Component command

The Insert-Add Component command allows to you interactively insert components into the active design.

When this command is selected the Add Component Dialog will be shown. After you select a part type or footprint with this dialog, a component will be created and snapped to the cursor ready for placement.

A unique reference designator (name) will be created for the component that uses the same alpha prefix as the last component added but with a unique numerical suffix.

These parts are footprints and symbols that been paired and added to the PCB123 parts taxonomy.



Add Footprint command

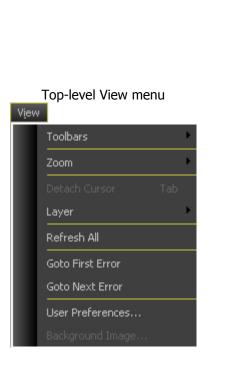
Add footprint allows you to select directly from the PCB123 footprint libraries and place parts on your layout. Once a footprint is placed on the layout, an auto created generic symbol is created and placed on the schematic sync page.

Add Connection command

The Insert-Add Connection command is really a tool that has a couple of features that allow you to define and modify nets.

The default mode for the tool allows to specify point-to-point wiring for a net by first clicking on a component pin and then clicking on subsequent pins to define the connectivity of a net.

View menu



<u>E</u>dit Panel Standard Toolbar 4 Add Object Toolbar 4 Layers Toolbar ¥ Selection Toolbar Zoom Toolbar 4 Zoom submenu Zoom <u>I</u>n PgUp Zoom <u>O</u>ut PgDn Zoom <u>Al</u>l Home Actual Size **UpArrow** Pan Up Pan <u>L</u>eft LeftArrow RightArrow Pan <u>R</u>ight Pan Down DownArrow Redraw End

Toolbars submenu



Layers submenu

~	Тор	1		
	Bottom	2		
	Inner 1	3		
	Inner 2	4		
	Inner 3	5		
	Inner 4	6		
	Silkscreen Top	Shft+1		
	Silkscreen Bottom	Shft+2		
	Solder Mask Top	Ctrl+1		
	Solder Mask Bottom	Ctrl+2		

Refresh All

The Refresh All command not only repaints the screen but refreshes the Object Hierarchy and rebuilds some internal tables. Pressing the Esc key when nothing is selected performs the same operation.

Go-To First Error

The Go-To First Error command zooms to, and centers the display around the first DRC error. If there are no DRC errors then you will be prompted to run a DRC.

Go-To Next Error

The Go-To Next Error command zooms to, and centers the display around the next DRC error. If there are no more DRC errors then you will be prompted to run another DRC and go to the first error found.

User Preferences

The User Preferences command is used to invoke the User Preferences Dialog.

Toolbars/Edit Panel

The Toolbars/Edit Panel command toggles the visibility of the Edit Panel.

Toolbars/Standard Toolbar

The Toolbars/Standard Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Standard Toolbar.

Toolbars/Add Object Toolbar

The Toolbars/Add Object Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Add Object Toolbar.

Toolbars/Layers Toolbar

The Toolbars/Layers Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Layers Toolbar.

Toolbars/Selection Toolbar

The Toolbars/Selection Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Selection Toolbar.

Toolbars/Zoom Toolbar

The Toolbars/Zoom Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Zoom Toolbar.

Zoom/Zoom In

The Zoom/Zoom In command increases the magnification of the display. If this command was invoked through the menu then the view center remains unchanged. If this command was invoked with the PgUp key then the view center will be where the cursor was when the command was invoked.

Zoom/Zoom Out

The Zoom/Zoom Out command decreases the magnification of the display. If this command was invoked through the menu then the view center remains unchanged. If this command was invoked with the PgDn key then the view center will be where the cursor was when the command was invoked.

Zoom/Zoom All

The Zoom/Zoom All command sets the screen magnification such that all objects fit on, and are centered on the screen.

Zoom/Pan Up

186 •



The Zoom/Pan Up command moves the view center up nearly one full screen height.

Zoom/Pan Left

The Zoom/Pan Left command moves the view center to the left nearly one full screen width.

Zoom/Pan Right

The Zoom/Pan Right command moves the view center to the right nearly one full screen width.

Zoom/Pan Down

The Zoom/Pan Down command moves the view center down nearly one full screen height.

Zoom/Redraw

The Zoom/Redraw command repaints the screen.

Layers/Top

The Layers/Top command sets the current layer to the Top layer. It also repaints the screen with the Top layer being painted last.

Layers/Bottom

The Layers/Bottom command sets the current layer to the Bottom layer. It also repaints the screen with the Bottom layer being painted last.

Layers/Inner1

The Layers/Inner1 command sets the current layer to the Inner1 layer. It also repaints the screen with the Inner1 layer being painted last. This command will only be available if the current design has more than 2 layers.

Layers/Inner2



The Layers/Inner2 command sets the current layer to the Inner2 layer. It also repaints the screen with the Inner2 layer being painted last. This command will only be available if the current design has more than 2 layers.

Layers/Inner3

The Layers/Inner3 command sets the current layer to the Inner3 layer. It also repaints the screen with the Inner3 layer being painted last. This command will only be available if the current design has more than 4 layers.

Layers/Inner4

The Layers/Inner4 command sets the current layer to the Inner4 layer. It also repaints the screen with the Inner4 layer being painted last. This command will only be available if the current design has more than 4 layers.

Layers/Silkscreen Top

The Layers/Silkscreen Top command sets the current layer to the Top Silkscreen layer. It also repaints the screen with the Top Silkscreen layer being painted last.

Layers/Silkscreen Bottom

The Layers/Silkscreen Bottom command sets the current layer to the Bottom Silkscreen layer. It also repaints the screen with the Bottom Silkscreen layer being painted last.

Layers/Soldermask Top

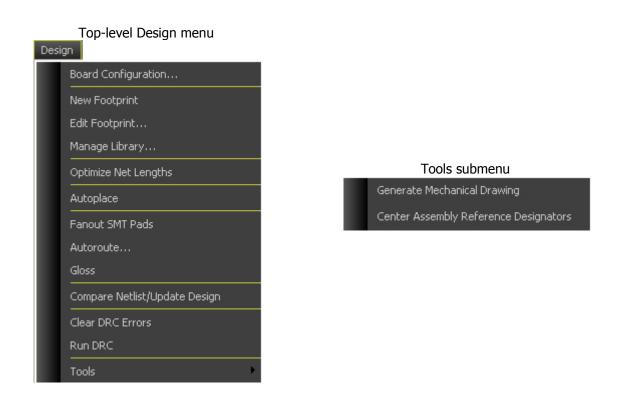
The Layers/Soldermask Top command sets the current layer to the Top Soldermask layer. It also repaints the screen with the Top Soldermask layer being painted last.

Layers/Soldermask Bottom

The Layers/Soldermask Bottom command sets the current layer to the Bottom Soldermask layer. It also repaints the screen with the Bottom Soldermask layer being painted last.



Design menu



Board Configuration

The Board Configuration command invokes the Board Configuration Dialog which is where you set such parameters as the number of layers, whether or not you want soldermask, etc.

New Footprint

The New Footprint command creates a new, unnamed, empty footprint and switches the view to the Footprint Editor.

Edit Footprint

The Edit Footprint command invokes the Library Browser (same as the load part dialog) so you can select a footprint to edit. Once you have selected a footprint then that footprint will be loaded into a Footprint Editor for you to modify and save.



Manage Library

The Manage Library command invokes the Library Manager Dialog which lets you perform such operations as create new libraries, catalog existing libraries, and cut and paste among libraries.

Optimize Net Lengths

The Optimize Net Lengths works only on unrouted portions of nets, not existing routing. The left side of the picture below contains a net before optimization and the right side after optimization. You can override this behavior on a per-net basis by setting the Do Not Optimize flag in the Net Properties dialog.

		· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	
		· · · · · · 😱	
		e e e e e e	
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	· · · · ·	· · · · · · ·	
		//	
		-	
and the second			
		· · · · · ·	
		n in a di 🕕	
		a sa sa sa sa <mark>ka</mark> a	

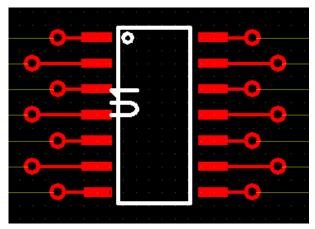
Autoplace

Autoplace makes a best effort attempt to place components on the layout board in a manner that minimizes overall routing complexity. The Autoplace function is not designed to be exhaustively accurate, but rather as a convenience to get you started as you complete schematic design and transistion to the early stages of physical layout.

Fanout SMT Pads

The Fanout SMT (surface mounted) Pads command automatically routes out any connection tied to a surface mount pad and then terminates at a via as pictured below.

If a connection coming out of a surface mount pin needs to be tied to a plane then fanning it out basically completes the connection to that pin and the ratline will disappear. Fanout also aids a very important routing strategy for high-density SMT boards. Because the surface layers on these boards are highly congested with pads most of the routing has to take place on inner layers. A smart strategy





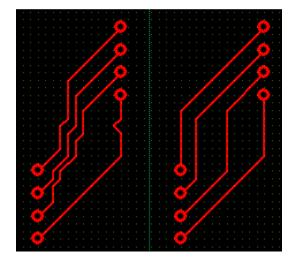
to get to these inner layers is to fanout the board early in the design process – preferably before any other routing.

Autoroute

The Autoroute command attempts to automatically complete all routing on the board. A reasonable set of defaults are used by the router but a detailed explanation of possible settings that can control the router can be found under Autorouter User Preferences.

Gloss

The Gloss command automatically performs aesthetic rerouting. It typically removes redundant corners and segments, often spreads routes out, and generally fixes such minor problems as acute angles and 90-degree bends. An example is shown below.



Compare Netlist/Update Design

The Compare Netlist/Update Design command loads a master netlist from disk, converts it to a PCB, and detects any differences between the master PCB and the current slave PCB. The difference list is then optimized to a set of changes that will have the least impact in the board. The list will then be presented to you in the form of an ECO Report Dialog. When this dialog is dismissed you will then have the option of automatically performing the changes that will make the slave match the master.

Even if there were no changes detected during the comparison all component footprints will be updated from the master.

Clear DRC Errors

The Clear DRC Errors command will simply delete all the DRC markers from the current design. DRC markers are generated from running the DRC command or interactively while editing your design.



Run DRC

The Run DRC (Design Rule Check) performs the following checks on all objects in the current design:

Track-To-Track Spacing Violation – Two tracks (routes) from different nets are less than the required minimum distance apart.

Track-To-Pad Spacing Violation - A track and a pad from different nets are less than the required minimum distance apart.

Track-To-Via Spacing Violation - A track and a via from different nets are less than the required minimum distance apart.

Track-To-Board outline Spacing Violation - A track and a board outline from different nets (or board outline with no net) are less than the required minimum distance apart.

Track-To-Text Spacing Violation - A track and a piece of text are less than the required minimum distance apart. This will result in overlapping or unreadable text.

Pad-To-Pad Spacing Violation – Two pads from different nets are less than the required minimum distance apart.

Pad-To-Via Spacing Violation – A pad and a via from different nets are less than the required minimum distance apart.

Pad-To-Board outline Spacing Violation – A pad and board outline from different nets (or board outline with no net) are less than the required minimum distance apart.

Pad-To-Text Spacing Violation – A pad and a piece of text are less than the required minimum distance apart. This will result in overlapping or unreadable text.

Via-To-Via Spacing Violation – Two vias from different nets are less than the required minimum distance apart.

Via-To-Board outline Spacing Violation – A via and a board outline from different nets (or board outline with no net) are less than the required minimum distance apart.

Via-To-Text Spacing Violation – A via and a piece of text are less than the required minimum distance apart. This will result in overlapping or unreadable text.

Board outline-To-Board outline Spacing Violation – Two board outlines from different nets are less than the required minimum distance apart.

Board outline-To-Text Spacing Violation – A board outline and a piece of text are less than the required minimum distance apart. This will result in overlapping or unreadable text.

Text-To-Text Spacing Violation – Two pieces of text are less than the required minimum distance apart. This will result in overlapping or unreadable text.

Object-To-Board Outline Spacing Violation – A route, pad, via, board outline, or piece of text is too close to the board outline.

Drill-To-Drill Spacing Violation – Two holes overlap at offset locations. This condition will result in a broken drill bit.

Unfinished-Route Violation – There is a connection between two pins that still needs to be routed to complete the circuit.

Board-Too-Small Violation – The minimum dimension in either the x or y axis is ¹/₄ inch. If you receive the Board-Too-Small violation, then the board is less than ¹/₄ inch in either axis. We cannot manufacture a board that small.

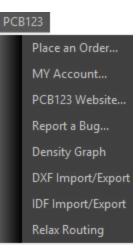
Silkscreen-Over-Pad Warning – Silkscreen outline or text runs into a pad that is unmasked. This is a problem for the fabrication process as well as possibly making the silkscreen illegible.

Dangling-Trace Warning – A route does not end at a pad, via, or other route. Traces in this configuration creates an antenna effect. While the antenna may be intentional, PCB123's DRCs will alert you to the condition as a precaution.

Pad-Annular Warning – The pad size minus the drill size is less than the recommended minimum.

PCB123 menu

Top Level PCB123 menu





MY Account...

The PCB123 – My Account command will invoke a browser session to your account status page at Sunstone.com. Once you've logged in, you can view your personal account settings including: your default user preferences (shipping address, carrier, payment method, etc.); personal profile information (name, company, email, etc.); and recent order activity including current status for any orders in process.

PCB123 Website...

The PCB123 – PCB123 Website command will invoke a browser session at www.sunstone.com

Report a Bug...

The PCB123 – Report a Bug command will invoke a browser session and take you to the Contact Us page for technical support on the <u>www.sunstone.com</u> website. From here you can report the bug details. Customer Service will acknowledge receipt of your bug report, and follow up with you as necessary.

Density Graph

PCB123 sample plug-in.

DXF Import/Export

This is a sample PCB123 plug-in to import/export a simple DXF board outline and mounting holes. This plug-in does not support arcs in the board outline. Only the board outline and holes that are not part of footprints or connected to traces will be exported.

IDF Import/Export

Similar to DXF plug-in. This sample plug-in allows you to import/export the board outline and mounting holes in IDF format.

Relax Routing

PCB123 sample plug-in.



Window menu

Cascade

The Window – Cascade command will rearrange open design windows into a cascading pattern.

Tile

The Window – Tile command will rearrange open design windows into a tiled pattern.

Arrange Icons

The Window – Arrange Icons command will move any iconized design files into an orderly row across the bottom of the PCB123 editing pane background.

Toolbars

Main toolbar



The Toolbars/Main Toolbar for the Schematic editor toggles the visibility of the Main toolbar. The main tool bar provides quick access to common file level and viewing commands such as: new design; save; open; cut; copy; paste; rotate; print.

Add Object toolbar



The Toolbars/Add Object Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Add Object Toolbar. The Add Object Toolbar gives quick and easy access to commands for adding objects to the schematic, including" Title Bar info; component symbols; polylines; board outlines; arcs; circles and text.



Layer toolbar

The Toolbars/Layer Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Layers toolbar. The Layers toolbar typically displays vertically, along the right edge of the PCB123 application window. The Layers toolbar provides one-click view filtering for all layers specified in the currently active edit panel.

5B

O G T

=

Т

2 T

в

Selection toolbar

The Toolbars/Selection Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Selection toolbar. The Selection toolbar typically displays vertically, along the right edge of the PCB123 application window. The Selection toolbar provides one-click view filtering for selectable items in the layout editing panel.

Zoom toolbar

•	
0	
	t
1:	l
G	l
1	
×	2

The Toolbars/Zoom Toolbar command toggles the visibility of the Zoom toolbar. The Zoom toolbar typically displays vertically, along the right edge of the PCB123 application window. The Zoom toolbar provides one-click view adjustment in the edit window

3-D View toolbar

Top Level 3D Menu





Wireframe

The 3D – Wireframe command disables the 3D view's solid surface rendering feature. This view often allows for close viewing of vias and traces in multi-layer designs. Wireframe can also provide a faster rendering of the 3D model on some computers.

Show Silkscreen

By default, the 3D view displays the silkscreen layer data. Turning the 3D – Show Silkscreen command off removes silkscreen data from the 3D model.

Panels

Display panel

The Display Panel provides easy access to layout window display parameters to assist in the design creation, review and editing process. The display panel contains three major functional regions: the Global View, the Appearance menu, and the Layer Display

Global View provides the user with a thumbnail view of the entire design space. A ghost rectangle shows the current zoom and pan location for the edit window. As the edit view zooms in further, the ghost rectangle naturally gets smaller. By dragging/dropping a rectangle directly on top of the Global View, you can quickly reset your edit pane view to a new location without tedious panning and zooming commands.

Also in the global view are a read-only display of the current cursor position coordinates, a read-only view of the current grid space settings, and user-selectable units for reporting positions in the design space. The available units include: Inches; Mils, Centimeters and Millimeters.

The Appearance region allows you to change the rendering for grids, backgrounds, ratsnest data, layer data blending and other methods for customizing the representation of your design. These tools allow you some sophisticated methods for managing the context data represented around your current area of concentration. Many of these appearance features can also be edited on the User Preferences dialog. A functional description for each attribute on the appearance page can be found in the User Preferences Display Page section.

The Layer Display region allows the user to turn layers and data types on or off. Presented in tabular view with rows representing a layer and columns representing a data type, users can interactively select the data to display. This technique comes in handy when concentrating on data for a specific layer, such as a ground plane or component/connector escape routing.

197 •



Project panel

Unlike the Display Panel, the Project Panel stays the same for all tabbed views of the design. The Project Panel displays three buttons across the top: Statistics Report; Netlist Report; BOM Report. Each of these three buttons generates and ascii format report based on your current design.

The Board Configuration area provides an interactive tree-style hierarchical access to all the design primitives: nets, components, pins, etc. and the associated meta-data. Properties can be edited from this location so care must be used by casual users not to inadvertently change their design.

The Schematic Properties are provides an interactive area for setting and adjusting line styles, text fonts and styles, and data fields for the design title block.

DRC/ERC panel

The DRC/ERC tab contains a live listing of all the current design violations in the project.

The DRC will report on shorts, opens, and violations of manufacturing rules such as minimum spacing between objects of different nets, and pad size vs. drill size violations.

Locations of errors reported by the DRC are marked with a grey circle-? icon. By hovering the mouse pointer over the error, users can access a summary explanation for the cause of the error being reported.

The DRC/ERC tab also allows users to access violations by category or by layer. At the top of the DRC/ERC tab are the



'stepper' functions, allowing users to move from error to error so as to view/fix each one interactively.



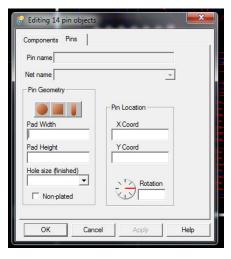
Context Panes

Pin properties

On the Pins tab, a selected pin will present its information here. The Pin Name and optionally-assigned Net name are editable. The Pin Geometry parameters allow for specification fo the pin shape, height and width, and the hole size (for thru hole parts). The Pin Location section allows users to reposition or rotate the pin to achieve customize or correct parts.

By selecting individual pins, users can achieve pin-by-pin access to the pin properties on the selected component.

Please note that unless the part is a user-specified custom part, it is not recommended practice to change the pin geometry or location information.



Component properties

On the components tab, shown here, users can change the Reference Designator, x location, y location and component rotation. Changing the values for these three parameters will move the component origin to the newly specified settings. Pleas note that this may cause the component to move away from any previously placed traces.

The Opposite check box will move the component to the opposite side of the board. When checked, the component will be on the BOTTOM layer; when unchecked, the component is on the TOP layer.

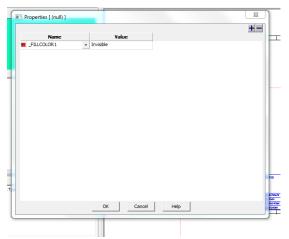
Part Type and Packaging can also be respecified from the Component Properties pane.

Component Reference X	e designator	X	<u>E</u>	
Y Rot	1.1425in	□ 0p	posite cked	
Part type	•			-
Part type	4078B1R			
Part type	9 4078B1R 9		Browse	



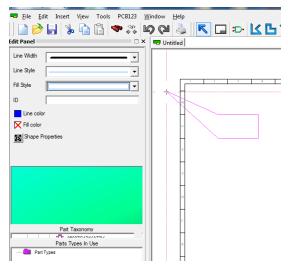
Polygon properties

The Polygon properties view offers two ways to interact with polygon properties. Selecting the Properties menu pick from the righ-click menu presents the following properties table. Users can add, delete and respecify properties as needed to change the character of the polygon.



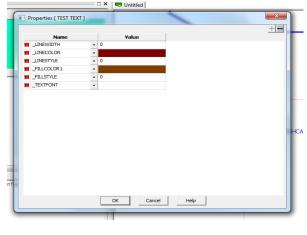
When the polygon is selected, the Edit Panel also allows access to some commonly used polygon properties.

Here the user has access to Line Width, Line Style, and Fill Style. The user Also can specify an Identifier, chose the line color, and fill color.



Text properties

The Text properties view is available by from the right mouse menu on a selected text instance. Text properties presents the user with a tabular dialog in which the user can add properties and specify values for the text box selected. By default, the Text properties dialog uses the text defaults, and no specific overriding properties are on the list. In this example, the user has specified properties that will affect only the selected text.



200 •



Dialog Boxes

About... Dialog

Besides some shameless vanity information, the Help/About dialog tells what version of PCB123 you are running and how much memory is the software is using.

	About PCB123		×
PCB DESIGN SOFTWARE	PCB123 - Version 5.0.1.6 (C) Copyright 2003-2010, Sun All rights reserved	and states thereases in the	к
V5	Total Physical Memory: 3979 Free Physical Memory: 967M PCB123 Memory Used: 291M	5	
SUNSTONE	Engineering Manager: Product Manager: Software Engineer: Support Team Lead:	Paul Waterman Nolan Johnson Dave Frielink Sal Hernandez	

Add Text Dialog

The Add Text Dialog is invoked when the Text Tool II is selected in current design or footprint. It simply prompts you for the string of text to add.



The **Text to Add** field is where you enter the text string. See the Add Text Command for more information.



Board Configuration Dialog

The Board Configuration Dialog is invoked from the Design menu or by RMB Properties when nothing is selected. It will also be shown when you choose to bypass the New Board Wizard and select File/New in which case additional fields will be activated that allow you to load a netlist for instance.

	Board Configuration ? ×
Board Name:	Netlist file name(s)
Untitled Board Size × 5.00 Y 3.00 Square Inch 15.00	Constant of the second se
	○ Six Layer Board □ Use Inner 3 as a plane layer □ Use Inner 4 as a plane layer □ Use Inner 4 as a plane layer □ Solder Mask (Selecting Solder Mask will enable Silk Screen) Silk Screen ○ None ○ Top ○ Bottom ● Top and Bottom
	Material Thickness Finished Copper Weight Lead © 0.031" © 0.062" © 1-oz © 2.5-oz E Pricing Quantity: Unit Price: Subtotal: 25 Image: State of the state
	Lead Time LEAD TIME: This order in by 12 PM Pacific Time will ship in 2 business days. .031 thickness or 2.5-oz copper weight orders are processed on Wednesday's. Example: This order in by 12 PM Pacific Time Monday will ship Wednesday. Orders in after the cutoff time will start the following business day.
Check if you do not want this screen di	splayed every time you open a new board Ok Cancel

It is primarily used to specify various board manufacturing parameters.

The **Board Name** filed is simply a label for your design. There are no restrictions on it.

The **Board Size** X and Y fields specify the rectangular size of the board. These fields are only active when this dialog is invoked in response to File/New, otherwise they are grayed out and only inform you of the existing current board size.



The **Netlist File Name** field can only be used when this dialog is invoked from File/New. It is used to specify a netlist or netlists to load into the new design.

The **Layers Required** field is where you can specify the number of layers in your design. The default is two layers but if you choose more than two then other options will be enabled such as plane layer assignments. If you invoked this dialog from Design/Board Configuration on an existing design and you decrease the layer count then objects on the deleted layers will be permanently removed from the database. Any routing on the removed layers will be unrouted and the ratsnest possibly updated.

The **Power Planes** checkboxes are only enabled when you specify more than two layers for your design. When they are enabled you can check which layers will be treated as poser planes. Nets that get assigned to power plane layers are assumed to be connected as soon as something in the net touches a plated-through-hole.

The **Solder Mask** checkbox is only enabled for two and four layer boards. Six layer boards automatically get a solder mask. Solder mask, also known as solder resist is a green coating that is uniformly applied to the board except where solderable surfaces are required such as pads. You must check Solder Mask if you want silk screen on your board. There is an additional manufacturing charge for selecting solder mask.

The **Silk Screen** radio buttons are only enabled if you have solder mask enabled. You can choose to have no silk screen, silk screen only on the top layer, silk screen only on the bottom layer, or silk screen on both top and bottom. If you choose to have silk screen on the bottom layer (or both top and bottom) then there is additional fixed cost applied.

The **Material Thickness** is almost always 0.062". There are several restrictions placed on a 0.031" board which are the board can only be a two-layer board, must have solder mask, and cannot have a 2.5oz copper weight.

The **Finished Copper Weight** option is almost always 1oz. There are several restrictions placed on a 2.5oz copper board which are the board can only be a two-layer board, must have solder mask, and cannot be 0.031" thick.

The **Quantity** drop list is where you specify how many boards you want to build. You can select between 2 and 100 boards indifferent increments. The price-per-board and the lead time is impacted by the quantity. You can freely experiment with this setting.

The **Check If You Do Not Want This Displayed** button can prevent this dialog from being displayed when you use File/New. This can always be unchecked by invoking this dialog in Design/Board Configuration.

Change Grid Dialog

The Change Grid Dialog is nearly universal in the system and can be invoked while doing other tasks such as moving a component. The simplest way to invoke the Change Grid Dialog is to press the 'G' key on your keyboard but you can also choose Edit/Grid from the menu bar.



Change	Grid		<u>? ×</u>
	New grid	0.025in	
ОК		Cancel	Help

The **New Grid** field is where you specify the desired grid. You can specify independent X and Y axis grids by separating the two with a comma. Specifying only one value implies that both the X and Y grid will be the same.

Component Property Page

The Component Property Page is invoked whenever a component is selected and Properties is chosen either by pressing Alt+Enter on your keyboard or RMB/Properties. It can also be invoked by selecting a component in the Object Hierarchy tree and selecting RMB/Properties.

😫 Edit Objects(s)
Components Pins
Reference designator
X Loc 1.9in
Y Loc 1.75in Opposite
Rot 0.000°
Part type Package name
DIP10_500 Browse
In library CONDENSED.SLB
OK Cancel Apply Help

If you only have components in your selection set then the only tabs that will appear in the property pages are components and pins. Otherwise other object tabs may be present too.

If you only have one component selected then all the fields in the Component Property Page will be filled in with the values from that component. If you have more than one component selected then the fields will be empty or in an indeterminate state. Any field left empty or indeterminate when the page is dismissed will be unchanged in the selected components.

The **Reference Designator** field (or component name) is the name to assign to the component. It will be forced to upper case and it must be unique in the design. If more than one component is selected then this field will be disabled. Any change to the

reference designator here will also be reflected in the companion schematic.



The **Component Attributes** button 🖽 can be pressed to invoke the Attributes Dialog.

The **X Location** field is where the component is located in the X-axis of the design. It will default to the current units but can be in the format of your choice. The X location is relative to the component's local origin.

The **Y** Location field is where the component is located in the Y-axis of the design. It will default to the current units but can be in the format of your choice. The Y location is relative to the component's local origin.

The **Rotation** field is the component rotation about its local origin. Rotations are counter-clockwise unless you enter a negative number in which case they are clockwise but will be converted to the appropriate positive rotation when this dialog is dismissed.

The **Opposite** button, when checked, signifies that the component is on the back side of the board. A component on the back side is automatically mirrored.

The **Part Type** field may or may not be filled out depending on how the component was originally loading into the design. If the component was referenced from a Device as opposed to a Footprint then the Part Type field will be the name of the device. This field is actually just a placeholder and be filled in with anything. This field will appear in the BOM report.

The **Package Name** field contains the name of the footprint this component uses and is not directly editable but can be filled in by the Part Browser dialog. If you select a different footprint for this component the new footprint must contain pins that will match up with the current nets used by this component. I.E. it cannot change the netlist.

Create New Library Dialog

The Create New Library dialog can be invoked either from the Library Manager or when saving a footprint in the Footprint Editor.

Why would you want to create a new library? Library management is a highly subjective topic leading to many lively debates but here are some facts:

- You don't want to save custom footprints into any standard library that is supplied with the software because they may possibly be overwritten the next time you update to a newer revision.
- There is no penalty in creating new libraries. Part searching by default spans all libraries in and under the Lib directory.
- By placing custom footprints for a particular design into its own library, you most likely will not have any naming conflicts with other parts of the same name but different content. The

Create New Library				
Enter a name for the new library.				
This library will be created in the Custom folder in the Lib directory.				
MyLib				
Enter a brief description for this library (optional)				
My custom footprints				
OK <u>H</u> elp Cancel				
205 •				



library will also have a small size that easily copied from machine to machine.

The **Library Name** field is where you define the name of the library you are creating. It will automatically be put into the Lib/Custom directory.

The **Description** field is where you can enter a brief description the library you are creating.

ECO Report Dialog

The ECO report dialog is automatically displayed when you perform a Design/Compare Netlist and there are differences between the netlist and the design.

Netlist	compare results	? ×
Chang	es must be performed in order shown	Done
4272	Add pin 'U55.11' to net '?185'	
4273	Add pin 'U55.12' to net '?184'	
4274	Add pin 'U55.2' to net 'N00563'	
4275	Add pin 'D69.5' to net 'N00563'	
4276	Add pin 'U55.3' to net 'N00560'	
4277	Add pin 'R221.1' to net 'N00560'	
4278	Add pin 'U55.4' to net '?186'	
4279	Add pin 'U55.5' to net 'N00562'	
4280	Add pin 'D69.3' to net 'N00562'	
4281	Add pin 'U55.9' to net 'N00565'	
4282	Add pin 'R225.2' to net 'N00565'	
4283	Add pin 'D42.3' to net 'N00565'	
4284	Add pin 'U56.10' to net 'N00575'	
4285	Add pin 'R222.2' to net 'N00575'	
4286	Add pin 'D44.3' to net 'N00575'	
4287	Add pin 'U56.11' to net 'N00574'	
4288	Add pin 'R223.2' to net 'N00574'	
4289	Add pin 'D45.3' to net 'N00574'	
4290	Add pin 'U56.9' to net 'N00592'	
4291	Add pin 'R224.2' to net 'N00592'	
4292	Add pin 'D43.3' to net 'N00592'	
4203	Add pip '1017, 2' to pet 'N00572'	

The **Print** button rightarrow can be used to generate a hardcopy of the change report.



Find Object Dialog

The Find Object dialog is invoked by pressing the 'F' key on your keyboard or by selecting Edit/Find from the menu bar. It is used to locate a named object and center it on the screen. This same dialog will be invoked by the **Snap Object to Cursor** command which instead of zooming to the object will actually move the object to the cursor.

Find Object	? 🗙
Name of item to find	
I	
OK Cancel	Help

The **Name of Item to Find** field is where you specify the named item or sub-item to find. Sub-items are specified by separating the item and sub-item name with a period. For instance:

U1 will center the screen on the origin of component U1.

U1.3 will center the screen on pin '3' of item U1.

Key Assignments Dialog

The Key Assignments Dialog can be invoked under Help/Key Assignments. By pointing at a key on the pictorial keyboard or actually typing a key on your physical keyboard you will be presented with information on what that key does by itself or when the Ctrl or Shift key is held in combination.



Key Assignments	×
Key Assignment	
Find an object. Use dot notation to find sub-objects.	
Shift	
Ctrl Snap a named object to cursor.	
	12 Prn Sorl Brk Sor Lok
	Del End Pg Dn Hom t PgU+
	$ \left(\begin{array}{c} \uparrow \\ \hline \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\ \\$

Line Width Dialog

The Line Width dialog can be invoked from the File/Edit menu, from various context menus, or by pressing the 'W' key. It is used to change the width of any line object being drawn. If you invoke this dialog while routing, then the new width will apply to the segment from the last corner clicked and all subsequent corners until you stop drawing or change the width again.



The Line Width field is where you specify the new width. It will default to the current units but can be in the format of your choice.



Load Part Dialog (simple mode)

Step 1: Search * and ? are wild	Step 2: Select	Preview:		
C Begins with 💿 Contains	24_DIPZIP_SOCK, 24 pins, 0.6in × 0.1in CPPT4 XTAL_DIP8, 4 pins, 0.3in × 0.3in		`]•	
DIP 🗾 🔁 🖸	DIP.2_7.62, 8 pins, 0.3in x 0.1in DIP10_300, 10 pins, 0.3in x 0.1in		•	
Example: MOLEX, LED, 1206, D04	DIP10_3005OC, 10 pins, 0.1in x 0.3in DIP10_400, 10 pins, 0.4in x 0.1in	•	•	
	DIP10_500, 10 pins, 0.5in x 0.1in	•	•	
Advanced Search	DIP10_600, 10 pins, 0.6in × 0.1in DIP12, 12 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in	•	•	
-Step 3: Insert	DIP12_300, 12 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in DIP12_400, 12 pins, 0.4in × 0.1in	•	•	
	DIP12_500, 12 pins, 0.5in x 0.1in	•	•	
Insert Selection Help	DIP12_600, 12 pins, 0.6in × 0.1in DIP14, 14 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in		300	
into PCB Design	DIP14 \$\$ 0, 14 pins, 0.3in x 0.1in		300	
Cancel	DIP14_300, 14 pins, 0.3in x 0.1in		 Default Podstyle: EXE 	OY60032P

The Load Part dialog is invoked in many ways. It may be automatically invoked while loading a netlist when a part type cannot be found in the library. It will be invoked when you choose to add a part manually using the Add Footprint Tool or edit the footprint properties of an existing component.

The **Search drop list** is where you enter the part search criteria. The drop list contains the last five searches performed. The search criteria may contain the wildcards '*' and '?'. The '*' wildcard means match anything after the criteria and the '?' means match any character in that position. Example: searching for DIP* will match DIP8, DIP14, etc. Searching for DIP?0 will match DIP10, DIP20, etc. By default all libraries are scanned for a Part Type, Footprint, or a description field that matches the search criteria.

The **Begins With** and **Contains** radio buttons are used to expand or limit the scope of the search criteria. When you have the Begins With radio button checked, only items whose name begins with the search criteria are matched.

The **Go** button will initiate a search of the libraries. Any item matching the search criteria will be listed in the **Select** list and the first item highlighted and displayed in the Preview Pane.

The **Advanced Search** button expands the dialog to include additional options found in the Advanced Mode of this dialog.

The **Select** list contains all the items that match the search criteria. The name, the number of pins in the part, and the computed X and Y pitch (spacing between pins) will be displayed for each matching item. The computed pitch will be shown in inches if the pitch happens to divide evenly into .005" otherwise it will be shown in millimeters.

The **Preview** pane shows a graphical view of the currently selected item.

The text of the **Insert Selection** button may change based on the context of how this dialog was invoked but its action is to dismiss the dialog use the currently selected item.



Load Part Dialog (advanced mode)

The Advanced Mode of the Load Part dialog is the same as the Simple Mode except for the following additional items described below:

Load part from library		<u>? </u> ×
Step 1: Search * and ? are wild	Step 2: Select	Preview:
C Begins with Contains DIP Cancel C Begins with Contains DIP C Go Example: MOLEX, LED, 1206, D04 Simple Search Step 3: Insert Help Insert Selection Cancel	24_DIPZIP_SOCK, 24 pins, 0.6in × 0.1in CPPT4 XTAL_DIP8, 4 pins, 0.3in × 0.3in DIP.2_7.62, 8 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in DIP10_3005OC, 10 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in DIP10_3005OC, 10 pins, 0.1in × 0.3in DIP10_500, 10 pins, 0.4in × 0.1in DIP10_500, 10 pins, 0.6in × 0.1in DIP12_300, 12 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in DIP12_400, 12 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in DIP12_400, 12 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in DIP12_600, 12 pins, 0.5in × 0.1in DIP12_600, 12 pins, 0.5in × 0.1in DIP14, 14 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in DIP14, 14 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in DIP14_3005OC, 14 pins, 0.3in × 0.1in DIP14_3005OC, 14 pins, 0.1in × 0.3in DIP14_3005OC, 14 pins, 0.1in × 0.3in	00 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0
Libraries included in search filter:	Footprints used:	Footprint details: Number of pins 14 Drill Size 0.032in Body Width 0.9174in Height 1.0172in Library CONDENSED.SLB Footprint DIP14_300 Description

- The **Library Tree** shows the hierarchical structure of the Lib directory and all subdirectories. You may check and uncheck individual libraries or folders to include or exclude them from the search. You may also click on an individual library to list the entire contents of that library in the **Select** list.
- The **Footprints Used** list will be filled in if you have selected a Part Type in the **Select** list as opposed to a Footprint. Some libraries contain Part Types such as 74LS00 and those Part Types may list multiple footprints that can be used.
- The Footprint Details section lists various properties of the currently selected footprint.



Load Selection Dialog

The Load Selection Dialog can be invoked either by choosing Edit/Load Selection from the menu bar or by RBM with nothing selected and choosing Load Selection from the context menu.

This dialog will allow you to merge and existing template or a previously saved selection into your design.

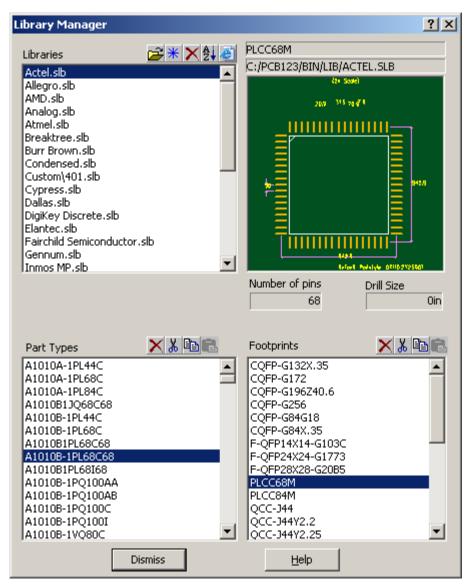
Load Selection/Template	×
Click an item to preview 4 chips neural_100 PC104 Plus PC104 Version 1.0 PC104 Version 2.5 16 bit PC104 Version 2.5 8 Bit PCI 3.3v 222 2222	 PC/104 Version 1.0 ◆
OK Cancel	Help

The **Item** list contains all the named templates/selections you have. When you click on one it will be previewed in the **Preview Pane**. The previewed item will be merged into your design when select Ok.



Manage Library Dialog

The Manage Library dialog packs a big punch in a small area. It can be used to create and delete libraries, copy, move, and delete library contents, and even create a web-based visual catalog of library contents.



The dialog is broken into four areas with simplest being the Preview pane that simply displays the selected part type or footprint. The other three sections each contain a list and a toolbar to perform various operations on the lists.

The Libraries list contains all the individual library files in the Lib directory and subdirectories. If you have not selected any libraries then the only toolbar option available will be the Create New Library button * You may select multiple libraries by holding down the Shift or Ctrl keys while clicking on library items. When one or more libraries are selected all the library tools will be available. They are as follows:

➢ Import NLF Items into selected libraries. This command will prompt you

for the name of a PCB123 Neutral Library Format file that may contain part types and footprints to add to the selected libraries.

- Create a new library. This command will create a new library in the Custom subdirectory using the Create New Library Dialog.
- Delete selected libraries. This command will delete the selected libraries from your disk. Use with caution.

212 •



List contents of selected libraries. This command will generate a columnar list of all items in the selected libraries as shown below.

Condensed.slb		
X	PART	Special Part Used With PLACE Utility
L	ED_T1	2-Pin, 1" Spacing,LED
L	ED1	2-Pin, 1" Spacing,LED,Digi-Key Catalog 963,96 pg398
L	ED2	2-Pin, 1" Spacing,LED, Digi-Key Catalog 963,96 pg398
D	DIP12	12-Pin DIP, 3"Spacing
D	DIP14	14-Pin, 3"Spacing DIP,N014 TI TTL Databook 88 pg3-15
D	DIP14J	14-Pin DIP Package, .3"Spacing For Connector/Header
Г П	1016	16 Din DID Destrore 2º Creating M016 TT TTT Data Bastr 99 no2 16

Generate HTML catalog of selected libraries. This command generates an HTML table with statistics and images of all the items in the selected libraries as show below.

TO3J4				
Library: Condensed slb				
Package type: Undefined				•
Number of pins: 6	Width: 1.509in"		\bigcirc	\sim
	Height: 1.04in"		\sim \circ	
Drill Size: 0.052in				°

The **Part Types** list contains all of the part types found in all the selected libraries. The Part Type Tools will be disabled until you select one or more part types. You may select multiple part types by holding down the Shift or Ctrl keys while clicking on part type items. The Part Type Tools are as follows:

- Delete Selected Part Types. This command removes the selected part types from their respected libraries. This is not an undoable operation and you will be prompted for confirmation.
- Let X Cut Selected Part Types. This command removes the selected part types from their respected libraries and places them in the paste buffer. You can then select a different set of libraries and paste the part types into them, effectively moving them from one library to another.



- Copy Selected Part Types. This command copies the selected part types from their respected libraries and places them in the paste buffer. You can then select a different set of libraries and paste the part types into them, effectively copying them from one library to another.
- Paste Part Types. This command will only be available if you have previously cut or copied part types. If part types with the same name already exist in the library you are pasting into, you will be prompted to overwrite them.

The **Footprints** list contains all of the footprints found in all the selected libraries. The Footprint Tools will be disabled until you select one or more footprints from the list. You may select multiple footprints by holding down the Shift or Ctrl keys while clicking on footprint items. The Footprint Tools are as follows:

- Delete Selected Footprints. This command removes the selected footprints from their respected libraries. This is not an undoable operation and you will be prompted for confirmation.
- Cut Selected Footprints. This command removes the selected footprints from their respected libraries and places them in the paste buffer. You can then select a different set of libraries and paste the footprints into them, effectively moving them from one library to another.
- Copy Selected Footprints. This command copies the selected footprints from their respected libraries and places them in the paste buffer. You can then select a different set of libraries and paste the footprints into them, effectively copying them from one library to another.
- Paste Footprints. This command will only be available if you have previously cut or copied footprints. If footprints with the same name already exist in the library you are pasting into, you will be prompted to overwrite them.

Merge Nets Dialog

The Merge Nets Dialog is only invoked when you are in the Connection Tool and you attempt to add a connection between two different nets. Because the two nets must become one, this dialog is provided as a convenience to resolve the final net name.

The two **Merge into 'Netxxx'** radio buttons let you choose to use one of the existing nets. 'Netxxx' is actually a placeholder. The real net names will appear in its place.

The **Use New Net Name** radio button, when checked, will allow you to enter a completely different net name for the resulting net. The net name you enter must not already exist in the design.

Merge Nets			<u>?</u> ×
Merge into net 'NET2	2'		
O Merge into net 'NET1	.'		
C Use new net name			
OK	Cancel	Help	



Net Property Page

Vet GROUND properties		
Nets Tracks		
Trace Width 0.006in	Spacing 0.006in	1
Via Size 0.036in	Drill Size 0.02in	1
Net Color (using a	lefault color)	
Assigned To Plane Layers		
Inner 1 (GROUND) ☐ Inner 2 (VCC)	Routing Priority	
OK Cancel	Apply Help	

The Net Property Page is invoked whenever a net or track/connection is selected and Properties is chosen either by pressing Alt+Enter on your keyboard or RMB/Properties. It can also be invoked by selecting a net in the Object Hierarchy tree and selecting RMB/Properties.

If you only have nets or tracks/connections in your selection set then the only tabs that will appear in the property pages are Nets and Tracks. Otherwise other object tabs may be present too.

If you only have one net selected then all the fields in the Net Property Page will be filled in with the values from that net. If you have more than one net selected then the fields will be empty or in an indeterminate state. Any field left empty or indeterminate when the page is dismissed will be unchanged in the selected nets.

The **Net Name** field is name to assign to the net. It will be forced to upper case and

it must be unique in the design. If more than one net is selected then this field will be disabled.

The **Width** field is the default width for tracks in this net. You cannot change existing track widths by changing this field. You must use the Track Property Page for that. The width will be clamped to a range whose maximum must not exceed $\frac{1}{2}$ inch. The minimum width will typically be .007" unless the board is configured to use 2.5oz copper in which case the minimum width will be .012".

The **Spacing** field is where you can enter the minimum required spacing for this net or nets. It is typically .007" unless the board is configured to use 2.5oz copper in which case the minimum spacing will be .012". Any physical object that does not belong to this net must meet or exceed this spacing or a DRC error will be issued.

The **Via Size** field is where you specify the default via size for any vias belonging to this net. It is typically defaulted to the smallest size allowed for the given board configuration. You should only change this for special circumstances such as you feel that a via in this net may carry a large current.

The **Drill Size** field is where you specify the default via drill size for any vias belonging to this net. It is typically defaulted to the smallest size allowed for the given board configuration. You should only change this for special circumstances such as you feel that a via in this net may carry a large current.



The **Net Color** button can be used to select the color of the ratsnest for the selected net or nets. This does not affect the color of routes, only the unrouted connections. This can be useful during the placement of components. Critical nets can be set to a different color for easy identification of the net's topology.

The **Routing Priority** slider is only used by the autorouter. You typically do not need to set this except for unusual circumstances where you feel this net might need the most direct routing and therefore should be routed early in the process. To set the priority low really means that everything else is a high priority except this net.

The **Assigned to Plane Layers** check list will only be available if you have set up plane layers in the Board Configuration. If you have, you can signify that this net is to be assigned to one or more of the plane layers. When a net is assigned to a plane layer then any drill in the net will constitute a plane "hit" and will be tied to that plane layer through a thermal relief.

The **Do Not Optimize** checkbox, when checked, will honor the current connection topology or connection ordering. The default is off which results in a dynamic shortest-length connection ordering base on the relative locations of all the pins in the net.

Package Print Dialog

The Package Print Dialog in invoked when you are in the Footprint Editor and choose Print from the File Menu. It is used to print a hardcopy of the currently active footprint.

Print Footprint	? ×		
X-Shift	Y-Shift		
Oin	Oin		
Rotation	Scale		
Mirror			
ОКС	ancel <u>H</u> elp		

The **X-Shift** and **Y-Shift** fields are used to specify an offset for the footprint. The page origin is the lower-left of the page so positive X shifts are to the right and positive Y shifts are up.

The **Rotation** drop list allows you choose an orthogonal rotation for the footprint when it is printed.

The **Scale** field is used to specify a scale factor for the footprint when it is printed. It is a scalar value and not a ratio. 2.0 is double scale, 0.5 is half scale.

The **Mirror** checkbox, when checked, will flip the footprint image as though you were looking at it from the back.



Pin Property Page

😽 Pir	Pin \$123 properties			
Pins Pin Name Net Name NET1 Pin Geometry	Pin Location	•		
Pad Width 0.066in Pad Height 0.516in Hole Size - Finished 0.05in Slot Length 0.5in	d	ation D0º		
Non-plated	Thermal 🗌 Tented	Slot		
ок с	ancel Apply	Help		

The Pin Property Page is invoked whenever a component or pin is selected and Properties is chosen either by pressing Alt+Enter on your keyboard or RMB/Properties. It can also be invoked by selecting a component or pin in the Object Hierarchy tree and selecting RMB/Properties.

If you only have components and pins in your selection set then the only tabs that will appear in the property pages are components and pins. Otherwise other object tabs may be present too.

If you only have one pin selected or one single-pin component then all the fields in the Pin Property Page will be filled in with the values from that pin. If you have more than one pin selected then the fields will be empty or in an indeterminate state. Any field left empty or indeterminate when the page is dismissed will be unchanged in the selected pins.

The Pin Property Page is the only mechanism for drilling down into a component without editing that component in the Footprint Editor.

The **Pin Name** field is where you label this pin. If you have multiple pins selected this field will be disabled. Pins can be unlabelled and net connected but they will not appear in any netlists or reports. Pins that belong to components must be unique unless unnamed. Pin names will be forced to use upper case.

The **Net Name** drop list is where you can assign or reassign a net to this pin. If this property page was invoked from the Footprint Editor then this field will be disabled.

The **Round Pad Shape** button **w** sets the shape of this pin to round. Only the pad width needs to be filled in.

The **Rectangular Pad Shape** button sets the shape of this pin to a square or rectangle. Both the pad width and height need to be filled in.

The **Oblong Pad Shape** button sets the shape of this pin to a rectangle with rounded ends. Both the pad width and height need to be filled in and if they are the same value then the result will effectively be a circle.

217 •



The **Pad Width** field is used to specify the width of rectangular and oblong pads and the diameter of round pads.

The **Pad Height** field is only enabled for rectangular and oblong pads. It specifies their height. It must not be zero.

The **Hole Size** is used to specify the finished (final) hole size for a pin. Zero is valid, indicating a surface mounted pin. The available hole sizes changes between plated and non-plated holes. The Pad Size must be larger than the hole size plus a minimum annular ring that will change depending on the copper height of the board and the diameter of the hole. The typical minimum annular ring is 0.008".

The **Slot Length** sets the length of a slot. Plated slots must have a pad annular ring and the guidelines are the same as those set for holes.

The **Non-Plated** checkbox, when checked signifies that the hole will not be plated and therefore not conduct electricity. They are typically used for mounting and tooling holes.

The **Thermal** check box determines how a through-hole pin or surface mount pad will connect to a plane or filled polygon. Checked the pin will connect with a thermal relief. Un-checked the pin will connect directly to a filled polygon with copper flooding all the way to the pads edges.

The **Tented** check box determines if a pin or surface mount pad is covered by solder mask or not. With the box checked a pin/pad will be covered by mask. Un-checked the pin/pad will have a solder mask opening.

The **Slot** check box activates the slot length field and allows you to create slots in your pcb deisgns.

The **Pin Location X** and **Y** fields are used to position the pin. The coordinate system used depends on the ownership of the pin. If the pin belongs to a component then the location will be relative to the component's origin. If the pin is a free-standing board-level pin then the location will be relative to the board origin.

The **Pin Rotation** field and spin control are used to specify the pin rotation in the pin's own local coordinate system. Pin rotations are counter-clockwise unless you enter a negative number in which case they are clockwise but will be converted to the appropriate positive rotation when this dialog is dismissed.

Board outline Property Page

The Board outline Property Page is invoked whenever a board outline is selected and Properties is chosen either by pressing Alt+Enter on your keyboard or RMB/Properties.

If you only have board outlines in your selection then the only tab that will appear in the property pages are Board outlines. Otherwise other object tabs may be present too.



🚳 Poly	properties	×
Polygo	ns	
Name		
Layer	Тор	
Net	(NONE)	
	Width 0.008IN	
	OK Cancel Apply Help	

If you only have one board outline selected then all the fields in the Board outline Property Page will be filled in with the values from that board outline. If you have more than one board outline selected then the fields will be empty or in an indeterminate state. Any field left empty or indeterminate when the page is dismissed will be unchanged in the selected board outlines.

The **Name** field is simply a way to label the board outline. There are no restrictions on board outline names and in fact they are not required.

The **Layer** drop list is where the board outline's layer is specified. This field will be disabled if the board outline is a board

outline as the board outline is assumed to be on all layers.

The **Net** drop list is where you can specify a net that this board outline belongs to. This field will be disabled for Board Outlines. If you assign a net to a copper pour then anything inside the copper pour region that does not belong to the same net will be cleared away from the copper pour. If you assign a net to a polyline then anything too close or touching the polyline that does not belong to the same net will be flagged with a DRC marker.

The **Width** field is where you specify the line width of a polyline. It is disabled for all other types of board outlines.

Print Artwork Dialog

The Print Artwork Dialog is invoked from the File/Print Artwork menu item and is used to generate detailed prints that match how the boards will be built. See Print Artwork for more details.

The **Select Layers** checklist allows you to check which layers will be combined together for the print. The layer colors will be the same as on the screen. You must have at least one layer checked for the print to happen.

	100	19763		
Тор	~	Fit to page	Scale	1.0
Assembly Bot SS Top SS Bot SP Top		Print in f Print in c Print in c Print in t	grayscale	hite

The **Fit to Page** checkbox, when checked, will print the entire design on one sheet of paper (or one logical page). This is mainly used for quick visual checks as the scaling will be arbitrary. When this item is checked, the **Scale** field will be disabled.

The **Scale** field is used to specify a true physical scale of your choosing for the print. The scale can range from one tenth (0.1) to ten times (10.0). If the design does not fit on one page at the scale you choose then the print will span multiple pages that you will have to assemble as one print.



The **Mirror** checkbox, when checked, will produce a print that is mirrored (backwards) as though you flipped the design around and were looking at the back of the board.

The **Print in Full Color** choice will print using the current object color settings. Print artwork will ignore the invisible object settings and always prints the collection of objects for the selected layers in the same way that the boards will be built.

The **Print in Grayscale** choice will print in gray values based on a standard RGB to luminosity conversion.

The **Print in Black and White** choice converts every printed object to black in the print.

Report Dialog

Board area19.380 Sq. InchesRouting layers2Plane layers2Vumber of components300Component pins600Other pins0Pins per sq/inch30.959752Number of connections238Unrouted connections112Number of vias117	Peard area		
Plane layers 2 Number of components 30 Component pins 600 Other pins 0 Pins per sq/inch 30:959752 Number of nets 182 Unrouted connections 11	buaru alea	19.380 Sq. Inches	
Lumber of components 30 Component pins 600 Other pins 0 Pins per sq/inch 30.959752 Number of nets 182 Junber of connections 238 Unrouted connections 1	Routing layers	2	
Component pins 600 Other pins 00 Pins per sq/inch 30.959752 Number of nets 182 Jumber of connections 238 Unrouted connections 1	Plane layers	2	
Other pins 00 Pins per sq/inch 30.959752 Number of nets 182 Iumber of connections 238 Unrouted connections 1	umber of components	30	
Pins per sq/inch 30.959752 Number of nets 182 Junouted connections 238	Component pins	600	
Number of nets 182 Number of connections 238 Unrouted connections 1	Other pins	0	
Number of connections 238 Unrouted connections 1	Pins per sq/inch	30.959752	
Unrouted connections 1	Number of nets	182	
Uniouted connections	umber of connections	238	
Number of vias 107	nrouted connections	1	
	Number of vias	107	
Total track length 331.907549	Total track length	331.907549	
Length to be routed 0.538516	ength to be routed	0.538516	
Total number of holes 707	otal number of holes	707	
Number of drill sizes 2	lumber of drill sizes	2	
Drill size 0.014 107	Drill size 0.014	107	

The Board Statistics or Report Dialog is invoked by pressing the Statistics Report button in the Project Pane. This dialog gives you a summary report of various board metrics for the currently active design.

The **Board Area**, always given in square inches, is the rectangular area of the board outline and not the true board outlineal area. It is basically what you are being charged for.

Routing Layers is the number of layers you have specified for routing. The number of routing layers plus the number of plane layers are the total layers for the design.

Plane Layers is the number of layers you have dedicated to continuous vss/vdd planes. The number of routing layers plus the number of planes layers are the total layers for the design.

Number of Components is the count of parts on the board with reference designators.

Component Pins is the total count of pins inside all components. This includes unnamed pins.

Other Pins is the count of board-level pins (not associated with components) you have added to the design.

Pins Per Sq/Inch is the average number of pins (both component and board-level pin) per square inch of board area. A number greater than 30 indicates a very dense board.

Number of Nets is the count of different networks in the design.

Number of Connections is the total number of all point-to-point paths in all nets that have to be routed.

Unrouted Connections is the total number of all point-to-point paths that remain to be routed or connected to a plane. This field will be red until all connections are completed.

Number of Vias is the total number of vias used by all the routing on the design.

Total Track Length, always given in inches, is the linear length of all routing in the design. This does not consider any plane layers, only routes you added. It also does not optimize any route sharing that may have been done – two or more routes from the same net that may have been drawn on top of each other.

Length to be Routed, always given in inches, is the theoretical minimal Euclidian length of etch needed to complete routing. Multiplying this number by 1.4 probably gives you a more accurate true distance needed.

Total Number of Holes is the grand total of all drilled component pins, board-level pins, and vias in the design.

Number of Drill Sizes is total count of all the different drill sizes used in the design.

Save Footprint Dialog

The Save Package Dialog is invoked from the Footprint Editor by selecting File/Save As, selecting File/Save on an unnamed footprint, or automatically if you close a modified footprint.

Save Footprint	<u>? ×</u>
Footprint name	
NEWPACKAGE1	
Select a library to save this footprint into	
CUSTOM\CUSTOM.SLB	▼ New
Enter brief description of footprint	
Enter footprint description	
OK Cancel	Help

You can only save a footprint into a single library. If, for some reason you need to save the footprint into multiple libraries then you can save multiple times or just use the Library Manager to clone the footprint.

The Footprint **Name** Field is where you supply the name of the footprint as it will appear in the library you save to. There are very few restrictions on footprint names except that the name must not contain the vertical bar character '|' and must not begin with an ampersand '&'. It may contain spaces but this is generally a bad idea because it can wreak havoc with report formatting,

especially if that report is going to be processed by later tools.

The **Select Library** drop list is where you choose what library you want to save the footprint into. Custom\Custom.slb will be the default library to save to. It is highly recommended that you always save into this library of some other custom library that you created. If you save into one of the standard distribution libraries then you run the risk of it being overwritten during some future software update.

The **New...** button allows you to create a new library before you save the footprint. The newly created library will be selected by default.

The **Description** field is where you can supply a searchable description of the footprint. It can be a readable string or a list of keywords. There are not restrictions.



Save Template Dialog

Save Template/Save Selection ? ×
Enter a description for this board template
OK Help Cancel

The Save Template Dialog can be invoked from the File menu or by RMB while you have objects selected and then choosing Save Selection from the context menu.

The Save template/Save Selection facility aids in design reuse.

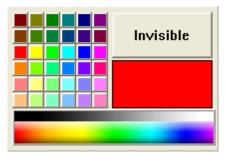
The **Description** string gets inserted into the template and is displayed by the Load Template dialog. The load/save template mechanism doesn't use the standard filename- based approach because it can become difficult to come up with descriptive filenames for templates. The supplied description is cooked into a filename that is stored in the Templates subdirectory.

Select Color Popup

The Select Color Popup is more like a menu than a dialog and is usually invoked by left clicking on a color widget but in the case of the Layers Display Pane by right clicking on a color square as left clicking in a square toggles visibility.

There is a fixed palette of color swatches in the upper left area, a 1-dimensional grayscale gradient below them, and below that is a 2-dimensional color gradient. As you move the cursor over the various areas the sample swatch will change color. Clicking the left mouse button will select that color.

There is a Visible/Invisible button that toggles the current visibility.



Text Property Page

The Text Property Page is invoked whenever text is selected and Properties is chosen either by pressing Alt+Enter on your keyboard or RMB/Properties.



8 Text testte	ext properties ×
Text	
Enter String (Use Ctrl+Enter F	or Multiple Lines)
testtext	^
	~ · · ·
Layer	
Silkscreen Bottom	•
Geometry	Location
Text Height	X Coordinate
0.05in	2in
Line Width	Y Coordinate
0.007in	lin
Mirrored	Rotation 0.000°
OK Cancel	Apply Help

If you only have text in your selection then the only tab that will appear in the property pages is Text. Otherwise other object tabs may be present too.

If you only have one piece of text selected then all the fields in the Text Property Page will be filled in with the values from that text. If you have more than one piece of text selected then the fields will be empty or in an indeterminate state. Any field left empty or indeterminate when the page is dismissed will be unchanged in the selected text.

The **String** field is where you specify the actual text string to be rendered. There is not limit to the string length but it will all be on one line. You can use any characters and they will be maintained in the database but the only character symbols currently rendered are the ANSI character set (ASCII codes 20-127).

The Layer drop list is where the text's

layer is specified.

The **Text Height** field is where you specify the letter height. Letter height is in physical units and logical units like point size. The text height is basically the cell height: not all letters are of uniform height such as the difference between 'e' and 'E'.

The **Line Width** field is where you specify the thickness of the individual strokes that make up a character. A good rule of thumb is the line width should be about $1/10^{th}$ of the text height. If the line width is too thick as compared to the text height then the text may blur together and become unreadable.

The **X** and **Y Location** fields are used to position the text. The origin of the text is always the lower-left of the first character in the string. The coordinate system used depends on the ownership of the text. If the text belongs to a component then the location will be relative to the component's origin. If the text is a free-standing board-level piece of text then the location will be relative to the board origin.

The **Text Rotation** field and spin control are used to specify the text rotation in the text's own local coordinate system. Text rotations are counter-clockwise unless you enter a negative number in which case they are clockwise but will be converted to the appropriate positive rotation when this dialog is dismissed.

The **Mirrored** checkbox, when checked specifies the text string is mirrored. Text placed on the bottom of the board should be mirrored so as to be right-reading when the board is turned around.



Track Property Page

The Track Property Page is invoked whenever a track or connection is selected and Properties is chosen either by pressing Alt+Enter on your keyboard or RMB/Properties. It can also be invoked by selecting a track in the Object Hierarchy tree and selecting RMB/Properties.

If you only have tracks or connections in your selection set then the only tabs that will appear in the

🚯 Track Track properties	×
Nets Tracks	
Routed width 0.007IN Clearance	
Net NET1	
From U3.4 To \$101	
- Stats	
Routed length: 0.000in. Vias: 0	
Unrouted length: 1.1982in Corners: 2	
OK Cancel Apply Help	

property pages are Nets and Tracks. Otherwise other object tabs may be present too.

If you only have one track selected then all the fields in the Track Property Page will be filled in with the values from that track. If you have more than one track selected then the fields will be empty or in an indeterminate state. Any field left empty or indeterminate when the page is dismissed will be unchanged in the selected tracks.

The **Routed Width** field is basically the width assigned to the first corner of the track. Other corners may have different widths but they must be done graphically while routing. There currently is no dialog for editing corner-by-corner information for tracks. The width will be clamped to a range whose maximum must not exceed $\frac{1}{2}$ inch. The minimum width will typically be .007" unless the board is configured to use 2.5oz copper in which case the minimum width will be

.013".

All other fields in the page are for information only and cannot be edited.

Update Components Dialog



The Update Components Dialog will be automatically invoked when you modify a component in the footprint editor and then dismiss the Footprint Editor window. Besides asking you to save the footprint into a library, you will also be given the opportunity to immediately update any affected components with this dialog. This will only be true if you initiated the footprint editor by modifying an existing component.

The **Update Component xxx** radio button should be checked if you only want to update just the component you selected to initiate the footprint editor.



The **Update All Instances of Footprint xxx** radio button should be checked if you have multiple components that use the footprint you just changed and you want to apply the changes to all components that use the footprint. The update only applies to the currently active design that you used initiate the footprint edit. It will not span designs.

The **Do Not Update** radio button should be checked if you do not actually want the footprint changes to update any components.

User Preferences General Page

The User Preferences Dialog is invoked from the View/User Preferences menu item. The General Tab

contains a somewhat miscellaneous collection of global settings. When this dialog is invoked all the settings are obtained from the currently active design. You can load a new set of preferences from disk, save the existing settings to disk, reset them factory defaults, or save the settings as the new defaults.

The **Units** radio buttons set the system-wide default units for display and for input. Changing the units does not affect the database at all. There is no internal conversion because the internal representation is independent of the external units display.

The **X** and **Y** Grid fields specify the current snap and dot grid for the system. They can be changed independently. See also the Change Grid Dialog.

User Preferences			
General Display La	yer Colors Routing and Spac	cing Rules Board Info	
Units C Inches Mils C Centimeters Millimeters	Grid settings X grid 0.025in Y grid 0.025in Grid color	Widths and heights Default drawing line width 0.013in Default text height 0.075in Default text line width 0.007in	Rotations and snaps Rotation increment 90.000°
Load Preferences		Save as Default Preferences Cancel	Reset to Factory Defaults Help

The **Grid Color** swatch is used to set the color of the display grid. See the Color Popup for more details.

The **Dot Grid** and **Line Grid** radio buttons allow you to choose between displaying the grid as a matrix of dots or lines. Dots provide less clutter but lines afford better alignment guides.

The **Full-Screen Cursor** checkbox allows you to turn on and off the full-screen crosshairs that track the mouse.

The **Default Drawing Line Width** field is used to set the default widths of lines and freestyle routing. It does not affect the width of a new route whose net has already had a net width supplied.

The **Default Text Height** field is used to specify the default height of newly added text. If, in the course of adding new text, you change the height from the default, then that new value will override the default value for the remainder of the session.



The **Default Text Line Width** field is used to specify the default line width of newly added text. If, in the course of adding new text, you change the line width from the default, then that new value will override the default value for the remainder of the session.

The **Rotation Increment** field is used to specify the default rotation increment for objects that can be rotated. The default is 90 degrees.

The **Snap Lines to 45 Degrees** checkbox is checked on by default. When snap is on, new lines will snap to 45-degree increments from the last corner drawn. When snap is off, lines will simply snap to the cursor grid regardless of the line slope. Line snap can always be temporarily overridden by holding down the Ctrl key while drawing.

User Preferences Display Page

The User Preferences Dialog is invoked from the View/User Preferences menu item. The Display Tab contains a somewhat miscellaneous collection of global settings related to drawing styles and object colors. When this dialog is invoked all the settings are obtained from the currently active design. You can load a new set of preferences from disk, save the existing settings to disk, reset them factory defaults, or save the settings as the new defaults.

The **Blend Layers** checkbox controls how overlapping colors from different layers are combined on the screen. When checked, two or more different overlapping colors are combined to make a third color providing a

User Preferences		\mathbf{X}		
Display settings	Routing and Spacing Rules Board I	Object colors		
	Background color Hi-contrast color Lo-contrast color Ratsnest color Pin names color Net names color	Track color Pad color Via color Fill color Text color Error color		
Load Save Save as Default Reset to Factory Defaults DK Apply Cancel Help				

see-through quality for the display. When this is not checked the colors are not blended, creating an overlay effect where one layer will obscure another where they overlap. The benefit of having blend on is basically more information on the screen, which can also be a drawback on very busy boards with many layers. The default is on.

The **Draw Wireframe** checkbox controls the level of detail at which objects are drawn. When Draw Wireframe is checked all objects are drawn hollow, and at single pixel width. When not checked (the default) all objects are draw filled and at true width. The benefits of drawing with Wireframe turned on are greatly reduced screen clutter and to check very small objects who are obscured by other objects.

The **Draw Hi-contrast** checkbox allows you to highlight the currently active layer in one color and everything else in a different color. As you change layers only the current layer is in the hi-contrast color, all other layers are in the lo-contrast color. If you set the Lo-Contrast color to invisible then only the current layer is drawn.



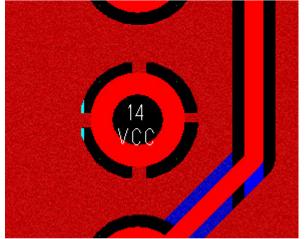
The **Show Drills** checkbox controls the display of drill holes inside pads. When checked (the default), the true finished drill size is 'drilled' out of pads and vias. When it is off, then only the pad or via is shown without any drill. Turning drills on has the additional advantage of making pin name and net name display less cluttered as they are shown inside the drill-hole. This checkbox does not affect non-plated holes as they are always displayed.

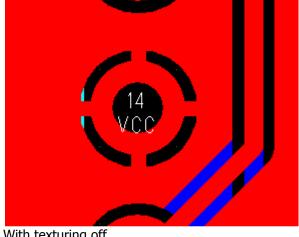
The **Draw Positive Planes** checkbox controls the polarity in which plane layers are drawn. When this is checked (the default), the interior of the board outline is drawn in the layer color while non-copper areas, such as pads that are not tied to the plane, are drawn in black. If you have a complex plane involving multiple nets that have to be split then it can be easier to draw and visualize the splits by checking this button off and displaying the plane as a negative.

The Draw Positive Soldermask checkbox controls the polarity in which the soldermask layers are drawn. When this is checked the interior of the board outline is drawn in the soldermask layer color while non-mask areas, such as pads are drawn in black. If you have a complex soldermask that involves custom unmasking of board outlineal areas then it can be easier to draw and visualize checking this button off (the default) and displaying the soldermask as a negative.

The Draw Hollow Copper checkbox controls how the interior of solid copper and copper pour is displayed. When this is not checked (the default) copper items are solid filled and copper pour items display the cutouts. On boards with large copper areas or copper areas that overlap on different layers it can be advantageous to turn on hollow copper to speed up screen drawing and prevent flicker.

The **Draw Textured Copper** checkbox allows for the display of textured copper to be turned on and off. Textured copper can provide visual separation on congested copper regions.





With texturing on

With texturing off

The **Background Color** swatch is used to set the background color for the display. By default it is black.

The **Hi-Contrast Color** swatch specifies the color to draw the current layer while in Hi-Contrast mode.

The Lo-Contrast Color swatch is used to specify the color to draw all objects not on the current layer while in Hi-Contrast mode.



The **Ratsnest Color** swatch specifies the color to draw ratsnest lines (connections yet to be made).

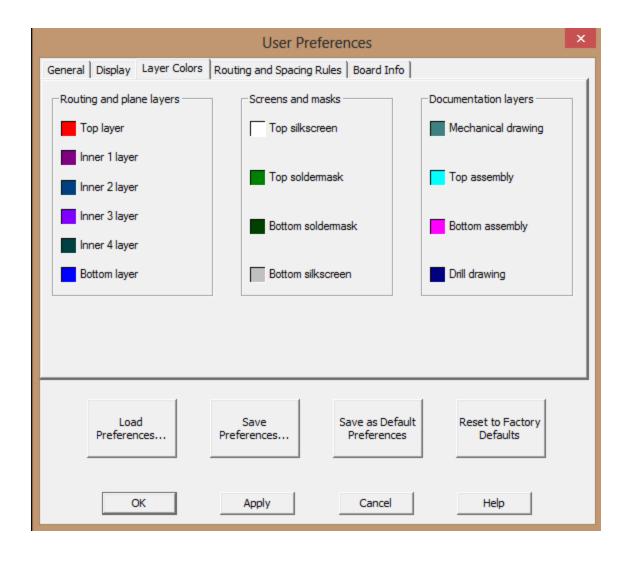
The **Pin Names Color** swatch is used to specify the color to draw pin names in. It can be invisible.

The **Net Names Color** swatch is used to specify the color to draw net names in. It can be invisible. Net names only appear inside of pads and vias and then only if they fit.

The **Object Colors** swatches are not really a global setting but rather provide an easy way to set the color of a class of objects regardless of what layer they are on.

User Preferences Layer Colors Page

The User Preferences Dialog is invoked from the View/User Preferences menu item. The Layer Colors Tab contains per-layer color settings. When this dialog is invoked all the settings are obtained from the currently active design. You can load a new set of preferences from disk, save the existing settings to disk, reset them factory defaults, or save the settings as the new defaults.





All the **Layer Color** swatches control the color of all objects on their respective layers. Setting the color of a layer sets the color of all object types for that layer.

User Preferences Routing and Spacing Rules Page

The User Preferences Dialog is invoked from the View/User Preferences menu item. The Routing and Spacing Rules Tab contains settings for the autorouter and for design rule checking. When this dialog is invoked all the settings are obtained from the currently active design. You can load a new set of preferences from disk, save the existing settings to disk, reset them factory defaults, or save the settings as the new defaults.

User Preferences		×
General Display Layer Colors R	outing and Spacing Rules	
Global mimimum spacing	Autorouter rules	
All Layers 0.007in	Routing grid 0.0125in	Via bias Neutral 💌
Per-layer mimimum spacing	Autorouter layer bias	Autorouter layer direction
Top layer 0.007in	Top layer Neutral 💌	Top layer Horizontal
Inner layer 1 0.007in	Inner layer 1 Neutral 💌	Inner layer 1 Vertical 💌
Inner layer 2 0.007in	Inner layer 2 Neutral 💌	Inner layer 2 Horizontal 💌
Inner layer 3 0.007in	Inner layer 3 Neutral 💌	Inner layer 3 Vertical 💌
Inner layer 4 0.007in	Inner layer 4 Neutral 💌	Inner layer 4 Horizontal 💌
Bottom layer 0.007in	Bottom layer Neutral	Bottom layer Vertical 💌
Load Preferences	Save Save as Defa Preferences Preference:	
ОК	Apply Cancel	Help

The **Global Minimum Spacing – All Layers** field allows you to set the minimum spacing for all layers at once.



The **Per-Layer Minimum Spacing** fields allow you specify the minimum spacing on a per-layer basis. On high volume boards you may want to increase the spacing on the outer, solderable layers while employing less restrictive spacing on the inner layers for additional routing channels.

The **Routing Grid** field controls the granularity by which the autorouter attempts to find paths. The finer the routing grid the denser the routing will be at the expense of time and possibly area. The area restriction will most likely be removed in a future release.

The **Via Bias** drop list controls how liberally the autorouter will use vias while searching for paths. The possible values are:

- **Use Freely** The autorouter will meander very little on a layer, enforcing a very strict horizontal/vertical layer direction. This is useful if the design has plenty of room for vias but poor 'flow' the layout where an excessive amount of meandering may block too many channels.
- **Neutral** This is the default for the autorouter. It does a reasonable job of reducing via count while maintaining decent layer directionality.
- **Avoid Using** The autorouter will attempt to meander around objects rather than move to a different layer with a via. This can prove fruitful when there is minimal room for vias.
- **No Vias** The autorouter will not attempt to use vias at all. It will basically attempt to route the board as a series of single-sided boards.

The **Autorouter Layer Bias** drop lists allow you to set up layer preferences or even restrict the router from using some layers altogether. The possible values are:

- **Favored** The autorouter will attempt to use this layer (and others with the same setting) before any other layer.
- **Neutral** This is the default. The autorouter neither prefers nor avoids this layer.
- **Avoid** The autorouter will only use this layer if it absolutely necessary to complete a path.
- **Do Not Use** The autorouter will not attempt to use this layer at all. This does not prevent a via from passing through this layer. You can route a single layer board by setting all layers except one to this value and instructing the router not to use vias.

The **Autorouter Layer Direction** drop lists control the preferred layer direction for each layer. The possible values are:

- **Horizontal** The autorouter will route on this layer in a horizontal direction.
- **Any** The autorouter will meander in any direction on this layer.
- **Vertical** The autorouter will route on this layer in a vertical direction.

Zoom To Coordinate Dialog

The Zoom to Coordinates dialog is invoked by pressing the X' key in the Design or Edit Footprint view. It is used to center the viewport on a specific coordinate.

230 •



Zoom to coordinate	<u>? ×</u>					
Enter coordinate (x,y or x y)						
0.575in, 1.55in						
OK Cancel	Help					

The **Enter Coordinate** field is initially defaulted to the current gridded cursor location at the time of invocation. Enter the X and Y coordinates you desire in the format of your choice. The coordinates can be separated by spaces or commas.





Shortcuts

In a number of locations throughout PCB123 – especially where specifying pin or landing pad names – users can use some shortcut notations to speed up and simplify the process of adding pin names.

A Bar (line) can be placed over pin names and net names by appending two consecutive hyphens (--) to the end of the name.

Sequences of pin names, pin numbers, and net names can be generated using shorthand notation. All shorthand within a base name appears inside square brackets [], and will expand using the following rules:

• **[NAME1, NAME2, NAME3, ...]** – Disjoint list. A list of names separated by commas will expand once for each name when placing consecutive objects. Example:

INTENS_[RED,GREEN,BLUE] - expands for the next 3 items as: INTENS_RED INTENS_GREEN INTENS_BLUE

• [#:#(:#)] – Numeric Range. Two numbers separated by a colon (;) denote an inclusive sequential range. If a third number is supplied, then it is the increment, or step, to be used when generating the sequence. Example:

ADDR[3:0] - expands for the next 4 items as:

ADDR3 ADDR2 ADDR1 ADDR0

[0:100:10]_DEC - expands to:

0_DEC 10_DEC 20_DEC



Key Assignments

The Key Assignments Dialog can be invoked under Help/Key Assignments. By pointing at a key on the pictorial keyboard or actually typing a key on your physical keyboard you will be presented with information on what that key does by itself or when the Ctrl or Shift key is held in combination.

Key Assignments						
Key Assignment						
Find an object. Use dot notation to find sub-objects.						
Shift						
Ctrl Snap a named object to cursor.						
Eac F1 F2 F3 F4 F5 F8 F7 F8 F9 F10 F11 F12	Prn Scri Scr Lok Brk					
	Ina Hom(Pg Up	Num Lok				
	Del End Pg Dn					
	_(<u>†</u>)	1 2 3 Ent End 4 PgD Ent				
	(+)	0 Ina Del				



Key Command

Crrl-C F Ctrl-F G L M N Ctrl-N O Ctrl-O P Ctrl-O P Ctrl-O P Ctrl-P R Ctrl-S U V Ctrl-S U V Ctrl-V W X Ctrl-X Ctrl-X Ctrl-Y Z Ctrl-Y	Copy Selection Find an object Snap object to cursor Change working Grid Change Layer Measure Distance Next DRC Error / Zoom New Document Move component to opposite side of board Open saved document View object properties Print Rotate Object Save file Unroute selected net Insert Fanout Via Paste Change line width Zoom to Coordinate Cut selection redo Swaps routing to complementary layer; inserts a via. Undo
F5	Refresh Screen
Up arrow Down arrow Right arrow Left arrow	Zoom up one page Zoom down one page Zoom right one page Zoom left one page
ESC SHIFT CTRL	Cancel Current operation; terminate mode Pans the display with mouse movement Allows any-angle routing when held during route procedure
HOME END DEL Page UP Page DOWN	Full fit screen Refresh screen Delete selected object Zoom In Zoom Out



Accelerated Designs' Ultralib Parts Definitions

The following is reprinted with permission from Accelerated Designs inc.:

Library Standards

The following represents a compilation of the standards we use in creating our libraries. There is certainly more specifications than what we have chosen to include on the web, so if you would like more detail, please feel free to contact us. Remember that most of our components are made with automated tools and exported to many systems, so there may be some variations not covered in this document.

Footprint Patterns: (Construction Standard)

Where possible our parts are consistent with the IPC-7351 standard. We deviate from this standard in our naming conventions, our use of English units of measure. Also areas not covered (like symbols and attributes, silkscreen information etc.) by the standard are either based on other industry standards or are documented in this document.

Units of Measure:

All footprints and symbols are built in English units (Mils) unless otherwise specified. Metric units are input when appropriate (such as the pitch of metric pin spacings) but all dimensions are shown in Mils rounded to two decimal places. Actual locations are stored internal to our tool to 8 decimal place accuracy.

Entites and Attributes:

Each component has a RefDes attribute on the silkscreen layer of the pattern. In applicable tools there is also a RefDes2 attribute or second RefDes attribute on the Top Assembly layer. Where possible a Maximum and Minimum height attribute has been added to each footprint. Each footprint has dimensions on a separate layer to identify key features of the footprint. Each footprint has both a silkscreen layer which clearly identifies the part and any orientation. Also there is an Assembly layer containing data representing the exact size of the part. Each footprint contains a placement boundary if this information is available in the targeted CAD tool and it contains test probe boundaries that change size based on the z axis or height of the footprint. Data is contained for each footprint in our internal database to provide a 3d DXF formatted footprint if desired.

Component Naming Conventions:

Where possible industry standard naming is used. Where possible the naming referred to in the IPC-7351A is used, with the exception that sizes are in Mils rather than MM. An example might be CC1206 for a chip capacitor that is 120 mils by 60 mils. If such is not obvious then a two or three letter designator is assigned (or the standard designator used on PCB silkscreens) such as RES, CAP, FUS, etc. Following this designation would be a pin count or



width x spacing designation, Examples: Xtal4_300x300 (overall size of part) or CAP200x400 or RES100x400 (width of part x Pin spacing). The following suffixes are also used:

A=	Axial	P=	Polarized, Press fit	
B=	Friction Lock or Ribbon	R=	Right Angle	
D=	SMT	RA=	Radial	
E=	Bottom Entry	REV	=Revised	
F=	Female	S=	Short, Shielded	
H=	Shrouded	SH=	Shrouded	
J=	JackPost			
K=	Keyed	T=	Additional Silk Information, Staggered	
L=	Long or Large	U=	Upright	
LE=	Latched Ejectors	w=	Stop	
M=	Male or Military	Z=	Mount Holes	
MM= Millimeter				
	New Distant an New Dalawing d			

N= Non Plated or Non Polarized

Connectors being special are arranged with a prefix (generally "CON"), then a pin count, then a designation of how many pins in the columns x the rows, and finally a selection of designators to help delineate between the different available connectors. Examples: CON10_2x5 would be a header style part with 2 columns and 5 rows. If it had a - UFKH suffix then it would be an upright connector, female numbering, some sort of keying and would have a shroud of some sort. Additionally, since there are so many connectors that are very similar, we might follow with a style name such as -CLM indicating a particular manufacturers style of part. This would help us in delineating between two manufacturers with very similar offering, but still different footprints.

Library Construction:

The majority of the patterns in the library are built using the Ultra Librarian product to assist in consistency and in reliability.

Where appropriate components are based on the IPC-SM-7351 standard. Exceptions would include thru hole components as well as parts built to a specific standard and so labeled. Where possible components have been built using the 3-tiered complexity level of:

- Least Material Condition
- Nominal material condition
- Maximum material condition

All components follow the Padstack Naming Convention. Where appropriate components contain local fiducials specific libraries for more details on specific included features. Padstack Naming Conventions.

Where appropriate components contain local fiducials.



Naming of padstacks start with a shape designator as follows:

R=Rectangular

- 0=0val
- E=Elliptical
- D=Diamond
- RD=Rounded Diamond
- C=Circular
- P=Polygonal

Shape designator are followed by an "x" with the size in mils and then a y dimension with the size in mils. Example: RX40Y30 indicating a rectangular pad with a 40 mil x and a 30 mil y side.

Size is followed by a drill size. SMT pads are designated as "D0." Others as "D" followed by the drill size in mils. So the above example would expand to "RX40Y30D20".

If this padstack is a blind via or buried via it is indicated by a suffix number.

If the padstack is modified from a standard or existing padstack it is designated with a suffix number.

Placement Points:

Each pattern has a pick and place point for assembly installed. It is placed on the pin one of the pattern for thruhole components and the centroid of the component for SMT patterns.

Each SMT component contains a glue dot as its centroid (where applicable).

Each component contains a placement point for referencing its pickup point in the CAD Tool. This point will reference the 0,0 location of the component for the CAD Tool.

Each component contains a rectangle of drawn lines or a filled polygon (depending on the CAD tool) that designates the total size of the component.

Each component contains a rectangle defining its nominal size for use with the height attribute.

Attributes:

Each component has a RefDes attribute on the silkscreen layer of the pattern.

In applicable tools there is also a RefDes2 attribute on the Top Assembly layer.

All RefDes Attributes are centered in the middle of the part with a Center-Center justification.

A 50 mil height attribute has been assigned to each component.



Component Naming Conventions:

If for some reason there are two components with the same name, a numeral is added at the end to delineate them.

Silkscreen Data:

Each pattern contains a silkscreen of the component on the top silkscreen layer. It avoids crossing pads where possible, but depends on a silkscreen removal routine to completely remove silkscreen from pads. Assembly information is included on the top assembly layer. It is intended to have a more complete description of the component available than would be available on the silkscreen layer. Assembly information reflects the true size of the part.

- Silkscreen and assembly draw widths are 6 mils wide.
- All text is 50 mil high with a 5 mil stroke width.
- Pin one is identified on all polarized components.

Vendor Neutral Format from Accelerated Designs Inc.:

All of the libraries for the various CAD tools are generated from a single database. The data is stored in a vendor neutral format. This means that it stores all the relevant data from all the various CAD tools that we support.

Data can be imported from the various CAD tools and converted to the vendor neutral format. When the vendor neutral data is exported, it is converted to the format of the CAD tool of choice.

Both the importing and exporting of data is done with Ultra Librarian, a product developed by of Accelerated Design Incorporated. All of the libraries sold were created by Accelerated Design Incorporated.



Known Issues

Schematic symbol does not update after editing

The original version of the edited symbol is stored with the board file. If you close your design and start a new layout you could add the modified part and you would see the updated symbol. If you are too far along in the current schematic to start over, you can use the updated symbol by creating a new entry in the taxonomy with a unique name. Then remove the original symbol from your schematic and replace it with the updated version.

You could also get around this issue by modifying the schematic symbol then save it with a new name. Now you can pair the new symbol with the existing taxonomy entry. Then remove the original symbol from your schematic and replace it with the updated version.

This same behavior exists if you modify a symbol's properties after it has already been added to your schematic. Changes to a part's properties while on the schematic will not show up in the BOM. You will need to use the method described above to update or create a new part in the taxonomy. Then remove the existing symbol on your schematic and replace it with the updated symbol to see your changes in the BOM.

Netlist files with spaces in part type names

When you import a netlist into PCB123 the program is currently sorting the list of parts by part type and doesn't handle the spaces in your part type names.

Example: Your part type names are listed as follows: HEADER 1, HEADER 16, HEADER 3, HEADER 4, HEADER 8, HEADER 9.

The netlist import tool stops reading at the space and combines all of these in a part type HEADER.

If the part types in your net list are saved as HEADER_1, HEADER_16, HEADER_3, HEADER_4, HEADER_8, HEADER_9 PCB123 would see them as unique parts and list them separately in the table.

If you run into this issue and you select a part for the header in the example above you may have just assigned a footprint that doesn't match the number of pins listed in your netlist. You will then get a "component xxxx does not have a pin named yyyy" error message.

To overcome this issue you can manually edit your netlist to remove any spaces then import the netlist again.

The plan for the next release is sort the table using a combination of Part Type and Package to identify the unique parts in the netlist.

241 •



Ultra Library part issues

We have found parts in the Ultra Library that have incorrect footprint associations, incorrectly labeled footprints, or footprints that match the component pads not the recommended land pattern. Please be sure to check every part that you place on your design to ensure that it matches the part that you will purchased and place on your pcb. We are working to correct these issues so please report any incorrect footprints or symbols that you see in the PCB123 libraries.